

# THAI

## BASIC COURSE

Volume 1



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

**FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1970

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

*FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE*  
*BASIC COURSE SERIES*  
*Edited by*  
*AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI*

## PREFACE

*The FSI Thai Basic Course, Volumes I and II, provides introductory materials in modern spoken Thai for the student who wants to learn to speak and understand the language used by an estimated 20 to 22 million people in Thailand.*

*The programmed introduction to Thai phonology which occupies the first 25 pages of Volume I is the work of Warren G. Yates, chairman of the Department of East Asian Languages at the Foreign Service Institute. Dr. Yates and Absorn Tryon, Thai language instructor at FSI, are co-authors of the 40 lessons comprising the core of the course.*

*In the early stages of the project Richard B. Noss, then chairman of the FSI Department of East Asian Languages made valuable suggestions. The authors have made extensive use of Dr. Noss's **Thai Reference Grammar** in the preparation of these volumes, and users will find that they are often referred to it for fuller explanations.*

*Mr. Prapas Kanchanandul contributed drills and assisted in matters of Thai language usage. Mrs. Tryon re-read the entire text of both volumes in Thailand in late 1969 and suggested changes to make the materials current.*

*Mrs. Phongchan Nabangchang collected and organized the items in the glossaries which appear at the end of each lesson and the comprehensive glossary for both volumes which appears at the end of Volume I. Irma C. Ponce typed the camera copy of the entire text while Miss Chotchai Kambhu, Mr. Prasert Crupiti and Mr. Thaworn Jimreivat assisted in proofreading, having previously participated in the classroom trials of the new materials in pre-publication form. Thai language textual material was tape recorded in the FSI Language Laboratory under the direction of Gary Alley with technical assistance from Jose M. Ramirez and Arthur Young.*

*The Foreign Service Institute gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education which has made the preparation and publication of these volumes possible.*

  
James R. Frith, Dean  
School of Language Studies  
Foreign Service Institute  
Department of State

# THAI BASIC COURSE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Volume 1

PREFACE .....	111
INTRODUCTORY SECTION	
Introduction .....	x
Organization and Use of This Course .....	xi
Instructions to the Student on Use of Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology .....	xiv
Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology .....	xvi
Reference Chart of Special Symbols Used in Thai Basic Course .....	xxxvii
LESSON 1.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	1
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	1
Grammar Notes .....	2
1. The Personal Pronouns .....	2
2. Word Order in the Sentence .....	2
3. The Question Word 'rǎy' .....	2
4. Final Polite Particles .....	2
DRILLS .....	3
EXERCISES .....	5
VOCABULARY .....	6
LESSON 2.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	7
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	8
Grammar Notes .....	8
1. The Question Word 'araj' .....	8
2. Use of 'châj máj ?' in Confirmation .....	9
3. Use of 'mâj châj' in Disagreement .....	9
4. Responding to Questions with 'rǎy' .....	10
DRILLS .....	10
EXERCISES .....	16
VOCABULARY .....	17
CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS .....	19
LESSON 3.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	20
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	21
Grammar Notes .....	21

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

1. Stative Verbs .....	21
2. Omission of the Subject .....	21
3. Negation of the Verb .....	21
4. Use of the Question Word 'máj' .....	22
5. 'Plurality' in the Noun .....	22
6. 'jàa' in Negative Request .....	22
7. 'nĭi, nĭn, nĭon' in Verbless Sentences .....	22
8. 'rĭy' in Negative Questions .....	22
DRILLS .....	23
EXERCISES .....	32
VOCABULARY .....	33
LESSON 4.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	35
Grammar Notes .....	36
1. Use of Unit Classifiers .....	36
2. The Classifier Phrase as a Noun Replacement...	37
3. 'khǒŋ' Used to Indicate 'Possession' .....	37
4. The Position of 'khraj' in the Sentence .....	38
5. How to Express 'Being' .....	38
DRILLS .....	39
EXERCISES .....	49
VOCABULARY .....	50
LESSON 5.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	52
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	52
Grammar Notes .....	56
1. Ways of Expressing Negation .....	56
2. <u>pen janŋaj</u> Meaning 'What is it like to...?'...	56
DRILLS .....	57
EXERCISES .....	60
VOCABULARY .....	62
LESSON 6.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	64
Grammar Notes .....	64
1. <u>caŋ</u> as an Intensifier of Stative Verbs .....	64
2. <u>keŋ</u> with Noun Phrases and Verb Phrases .....	64
3. Verbs with Obligatory Complements .....	65
4. Terms Used to Refer to People .....	65
5. Words Relating to Names of Cities and Countries	66
6. Another Use of <u>khraj</u> .....	66

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

DRILLS .....	67
EXERCISES .....	79
COMPREHENSION TEST .....	80
VOCABULARY .....	82
LESSON 7.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	86
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	86
Grammar Notes .....	87
1. <u>khəej</u> to Indicate Past Experience .....	87
2. <u>paj</u> + Place Expressions .....	87
3. Lack of Verb Inflection .....	87
4. Omission of Subject Pronoun .....	88
5. Sentence + <u>dâj</u> to Indicate 'possibility' or 'suitability' .....	88
6. Sentence + <u>pen</u> to Indicate 'ability to perform some activity' .....	88
7. Use of <u>khəej</u> + <u>pen</u> / <u>daj</u> .....	89
DRILLS .....	90
EXERCISES .....	109
VOCABULARY .....	110
Map of Thailand Showing Some Provinces .....	113
LESSON 8.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	115
Grammar Notes .....	115
1. Compounds .....	115
2. <u>jùu</u> + Place Expressions .....	118
3. Responses to <u>thamnaan araj</u> .....	118
4. Difference between <u>paj nǎj</u> and <u>paj thǐnǎj</u> ...	118
DRILLS .....	118
EXERCISES .....	129
VOCABULARY .....	130
LESSON 9.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	135
Grammar Notes .....	135
1. Means of Indicating 'Time' and 'Aspect' of the Verb .....	135
2. Function of the Question Words .....	137
GRAMMAR DRILLS .....	139
EXERCISES .....	156
VOCABULARY .....	158

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON 10.

BASIC EPISODE .....	160
Questions on Basic Episode .....	160
DRILLS .....	161
EXERCISE .....	170
VOCABULARY .....	170

## LESSON 11.

BASIC DIALOG .....	171
Grammar Notes .....	172
1. Use of <u>kan</u> to Indicate 'Mutuality' and 'Plurality' .....	172
2. <u>araj</u> , <u>khraj</u> , and <u>năj</u> as Indefinite Pronouns ...	172
3. Numerals .....	173
4. <u>thfi</u> with Included Modifiers or Specifiers ....	174
5. <u>yyn yyn</u> as a Pluralizer .....	175
DRILLS .....	175
EXERCISES .....	188
VOCABULARY .....	189

## LESSON 12.

BASIC DIALOG .....	191
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	192
Grammar Notes .....	193
1. Ordinal Numbers .....	193
2. <u>rêsk</u> as a Number .....	193
3. Ordinal Numbers After Classifiers .....	194
4. Expressing 'Age' .....	194
5. <u>léew</u> and <u>jan</u> to Express State of an Action ....	194
6. <u>jan mâj</u> ... Versus <u>jan mâj dâj</u> ... .....	195
7. Position of Classifier Phrases Referring to Pronoun Subject .....	195
DRILLS .....	195
EXERCISES .....	212
VOCABULARY .....	212

## LESSON 13.

BASIC DIALOG .....	215
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	215
Grammar Notes .....	216
1. <u>lik</u> ... <u>ca</u> for Future Time .....	216
2. <u>paj</u> as an Indicator of Excess with <u>cha</u> and <u>rew</u>	216
DRILLS .....	217
EXERCISES .....	229
VOCABULARY .....	231

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

LESSON 14.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	233
Grammar Notes .....	234
1. <u>klaj</u> and <u>klâj</u> .....	234
2. Extent of Distance Constructions .....	235
3. <u>mii</u> Indicating 'existence' .....	235
DRILLS .....	236
EXERCISES .....	254
VOCABULARY .....	254
LESSON 15.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	257
Questions on the Interview .....	259
EXERCISES .....	260
VOCABULARY .....	260
LESSON 16.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	262
DRILLS .....	263
EXERCISES .....	273
VOCABULARY .....	274
LESSON 17.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	
Grammar Notes .....	276
1. <u>paj</u> / <u>maa</u> used to Indicate Direction of Motion .....	276
2. Prepositions in Compounds .....	277
DRILLS .....	277
EXERCISES .....	286
VOCABULARY .....	286
LESSON 18.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	290
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	291
Grammar Notes .....	291
Sentence Embedding .....	291
DRILLS .....	293
EXERCISES .....	306
VOCABULARY .....	308
LESSON 19.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	310
Grammar Drills .....	310
EXERCISES .....	317
VOCABULARY .....	318

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON 20.

BASIC EPISODE .....	319
Questions on the Basic Episode .....	320
EXERCISES .....	322
VOCABULARY .....	323
TEXT GLOSSARY .....	G-1

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## INTRODUCTORY SECTION

### Introduction

This is the first volume of a three-volume course designed to teach Standard Thai. Standard Thai is the national spoken language of Thailand and is the dialect of educated speakers of Bangkok and Central Thailand. Standard Thai in spoken and written form is known to some extent by nearly all Thais. There are approximately 20 million speakers.

The materials contained in the first two volumes consist of the following:

- (1) A Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology,
- (2) A standard text of 40 lessons, and
- (3) A text glossary.

Not included in the text but considered to be an integral part of the course are a series of tapes consisting of taped portions of the text and other supplementary materials.

These materials were designed to be used in a course of instruction where the main focus is on teaching the student to speak and understand Thai. This is not to say that reading and writing should be ignored, but that additional materials would be required for that purpose.

Basic to the approach recommended by the authors of this text are the following tenets:

- (1) In the classroom only Thai should be spoken.
- (2) The teacher should be either a native speaker of Thai, or a non-native with excellent control of the language.
- (3) Every effort should be made to make the instruction both in and out of class approximate 'real' use of the language.
- (4) The use of audio-visual devices of all kinds (charts, films, objects, etc.) is encouraged, but they must be used in such a way as to function as an integrated part of the instruction and not just as an interesting appendage.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- (5) Language learning is a largely a function of the student's interest, motivation, and application; therefore, every effort should be made to interest and motivate him to make the requisite effort to learn the language. Next to the student, the language teacher is the most important element in the learning process; it is, therefore, imperative that the teacher not be restricted to following slavishly any particular course of study. With this in mind we encourage Thai language instructors to look upon this text and the accompanying tapes as useful devices which may be modified as required and should in no sense be thought of as the sole or even the main instruments for teaching Thai.

### ORGANIZATION AND USE OF THIS COURSE

#### 1. Basic Dialog

There is a basic dialog at the beginning of each lesson. It consists of a limited number of exchanges between two or sometimes more persons. It represents a somewhat modified version of a 'real' dialog, since hesitation phenomena, false starts, and other features regularly occurring in real speech have been eliminated. It does present what two educated Thai speakers might say in a given situation if they were being particularly careful to avoid the features referred to above.

If the student has memorized the dialogs, he will have a store of language that is readily available when needed (assuming he is in a situation comparable to that of a particular dialog). It is, therefore, suggested that some time be spent for this purpose. Most of this time should be outside of the classroom with the tape recorder, since different students memorize at different rates, and if many class hours are used for this purpose, it will prove very boring to quick learners and very frustrating to slow ones.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 2. Notes

There are three kinds of notes in this text: notes on the dialog, vocabulary notes, and grammar notes. Notes on the dialog present some information that is useful for understanding the dialog. It is often cultural. Vocabulary notes are used to explain the meaning of a word in somewhat greater depth than is included in the lesson glossary. Grammar notes provide a general understanding of Thai grammar. They are written in such a manner as to be useful to even the most linguistically unsophisticated learner. All types of notes should be read and studied outside of class. If some points are still unclear, the instructor may clarify further by giving additional examples, paraphrasing, or by explaining in Thai.

### 3. Drills

The drills in this textbook are for the purpose of providing an opportunity for the student to isolate a particular feature (grammatical or semantic) of the language and to practice it in a limited context until he understands well how to use it and can say it with good fluency and pronunciation.

It should be clearly understood that drills of any kind are simply devices for actuating practice having a particular focus and with a limited objective, and as such they do not represent 'real communication' in language no matter how cleverly they are arranged; therefore, the instructor should be constantly alert to signs of boredom and should switch to a different type of activity before that point is reached.

All this is not to say that drills do not have a place in language teaching. It is probable that a certain number of drills are very helpful if not absolutely indispensable in learning to speaking language well.

Various kinds of drill (substitution, transformation, etc.) are found in this textbook. In most cases it is obvious from the format of the drill what procedure (substitution of an item in a sentence, rearrangement of a sentence, expansion of a sentence or phrase, etc.) is called for. In those instances where it might not be clear, special instructions are provided.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 4. Exercises

'Exercises' (as the term is used in this textbook) are distinguishable from drills mainly by the type of response they elicit. Drills are designed to elicit one particular response and any other response (even if it is correct in form and meaning) is unacceptable; whereas, the only requirement in an exercise is that the response conform logically with the original request (i.e. if you are asked where a certain building is, you don't respond with a description of it instead).

The exercises in any particular lessons in this text have two basic purposes: to provide (1) a setting in which communication of a restricted kind can take place and (2) a means for the instructor to test the ability of the students to use the material in the lesson in more realistic situations.

The exercises in the lessons are an especially important part of the lesson and should be done at the end of the lesson. If students are unable to perform well the tasks presented to them, the instructor should review any parts of the lesson that seem necessary for successful completion of those tasks. In no case should students go to the next lesson until they can do the exercises easily, rapidly, and correctly.

### 5. Lesson and Text Glossaries

At the end of each lesson there is a list of all words occurring for the first time in that lesson and at the end of the volume there is a complete list of words in the first volume.

All entries are listed in alphabetical order (English alphabet) and are written in a phonemic transcription using Roman letters. With each noun is its unit classifier. A limited number of the more useful noun and verb compounds are included. Two examples are given below:

mǎo (khon) ..... doctor (medical)

khâw paj ..... to enter (away from the speaker)

khâw maa ..... to enter (towards the speaker)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 6. Taped Material

Besides the tapes which form a major part of the Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology, there are tapes of various kinds that accompany each lesson. The dialogs and most of the essential drills are recorded on the lesson tapes; however, they are recorded in such a manner as not to be an exact duplicate of the way in which the drill will be conducted in class, since the purpose of the tapes is to supplement not replace classroom work. Special pronunciation drills and remarks are included on the tapes.

#### INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENT ON USE OF PROGRAMMED INTRODUCTION TO THAI PHONOLOGY

The purpose of this material is to acquaint you with the significant features of the Thai sound system. 'Significant' as used here refers to those features which distinguish words; for example, in English the words sit and set are distinguished only by the quality of the two vowels; therefore, we can say that vowel quality is significant in English (i.e. if you say sit instead of set, you may be misunderstood.) It is, therefore, important that you learn to hear and produce vowel quality. On the other hand, it doesn't matter whether you pronounce the vowel in hit long or short. You may find it a little harder to understand a Southerner who pronounces hit with a slightly longer vowel than you do, but you will not confuse it with heat, which has different vowel quality. We can see then that vowel quality is significant, but vowel length isn't in English.

The significant features of the Thai sound system referred to here relate to contrasts in pitch contour, length of vowels and diphthongs, aspiration of consonants, and syllable prominence.

In addition to the sound features referred to, you will be taught to read and write the special phonetic transcription which is used in the Thai Basic Course that follows this instruction.

The following procedure should be used with these materials:

- (1) Put tape 1 of the Programmed Introduction on the tape recorder and proceed through it carrying out the instructions you hear on the tape. You will

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

not need to refer to the text except for those portions of the material where you are asked to read or write something.

- (2) When you are asked to write something, write it in the text and check your answers. If you need more time than is provided on the tape for checking your answers, stop the machine.
- (3) If at any time in the program, you are confused about something, stop the tape, rewind it and listen to that particular part again.
- (4) Although the program was designed primarily for use before beginning lesson one in the text, all of it or parts of it can be used profitably at later stages in the course as well.
- (5) It is suggested that you do not work for longer periods of time than 30 minutes. Take a short break, and then return. All of the tapes can be completed in one day.
- (6) Since almost all of the material is only on tape, it would be clearly impossible to do the program without the tapes and a tape recorder.

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## A PROGRAMMED INTRODUCTION TO THAI PHONOLOGY

(Student's Text)

Part I is on Tape only.<sup>1</sup>

Part II, Section 1, Frames 1-10, are on Tape only.<sup>2</sup>

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
11	Observe the way this word is written in the special writing system used in this book:  phaa
12	The 'ph' is used to represent the initial consonant in the word, which sounds like the 'p' in 'pat' in English. The 'aa' stands for 'long a', which sounds like 'ah' in 'father'.
13	Observe the way this word is written. Notice particularly the symbol above the vowels.  phâa
14	The 'hat' or 'circumflex accent' over the first vowel is used to indicate that the vowel is pronounced with a <u>high falling</u> pitch contour.
15	Pronounce this word 3 times: phâa After each attempt listen to the tape for confirmation.

- 
1. The only 'frames' that are written out in this text are those where you are asked to look at how something is written; otherwise, the content of the frame is voiced only.
  2. You will be notified by the tape when you are to refer to the written text. Be sure to cover the answer when doing a written frame.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Frame

### Content

- 16 If no mark is written above the vowel, that is indication that the word is to be pronounced with a mid level pitch contour. Listen to the pronunciation of phaa.
- 17 Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and write a mark above the vowel when necessary:  
(1) phaa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phaa (5) phaa
- Answers: (1) phâa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phâa
- 18 Listen to the following words and write them in the Thai transcription in the spaces below:  
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)
- Answers: (1) phaa (2) phâa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phaa
- 19 This word has low rising pitch. It is written phǎa.
- 20 The mark / ~ / is written above the vowel to indicate that it is to be pronounced with a low rising pitch contour.
- 21 Read the following words. Check your response by the Tape.  
(1) phǎa (2) phaa (3) phâa (4) phaa (5) phâa  
(6) phǎa
- 22 Put the tone markers on the following words after they are pronounced on the tape.  
(1) phaa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phaa (5) phaa  
(6) phaa (7) phaa (8) phaa
- Answers: (1) phâa (2) phǎa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phǎa  
(6) phǎa (7) phaa (8) phâa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
23	Transcribe the following words: (1)           (2)           (3)           (4)           (5) (6)           (7)           (8)           (9)           (10)
Answers:	(1) phǎa (2) phaa (3) phâa (4) phǎa (5) phâa (6) phaa (7) phâa (8) phaa (9) phǎa (10) phâa

Part II Section 1, Drills, Frames 1-17 are on tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
18	This time look at the words below as they are read on the tape. Note carefully how they are written in the special writing system.  (1) naa (2) nǎa (3) laa (4) hâa (5) khâa (6) mǎa (7) phaa (8) maa (9) sǎa (10) thâa (11) khaa (12) lǎa (13) daa (14) bâa (15) wâa (16) thaa (17) nâa (18) phâa (19) hǎa (20) saa
19	This time write the words you hear on the tape in the spaces below using the special writing system:  (1)           (2)           (3)           (4)           (5) (6)           (7)           (8)           (9)           (10) (11)          (12)          (13)          (14)          (15) (16)          (17)          (18)          (19)          (20)
Answers:	(1) phâa (2) maa (3) thǎa (4) bâa (5) khâa (6) fǎa (7) haa (8) phǎa (9) nâa (10) thaa (11) khǎa (12) laa (13) hǎa (14) nâa (15) phaa (16) saa (17) thǎa (18) khaa (19) hâa (20) mǎa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part II Section 2, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
11	The symbol / ' / above the vowel is used to indicate High pitch contour. Put the correct tone marker above the vowel in the words below: (1) chaan (2) maà (3) laan (4) khaa

Answers: (1) cháan (2) máa (3) láan (4) kháa

Part II, Section 2, Frames 12-20 are on Tape only.

21	Indicate the pitch contour of the following words by writing / ^ / for high falling pitch; / ' / for High; and nothing for mid level. (1) khaan (2) khaan (3) khaan (4) khaan (5) khaan
----	--

Answer: (1) khâan (2) kháan (3) khaan (4) khâan (5) kháan

22	Listen to these words and transcribe them below: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8)
----	--

Answers: (1) kháan (2) khâan (3) khaan (4) kháan  
(5) khâan (6) khaan (7) kháan (8) khâan

23	Read the following words and listen to the tape for pronunciation check: (1) kháan (2) khaan (3) khâan (4) khaan (5) khâan (6) kháan (7) kháan (8) khâan
----	--

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part II, Section 2 Drills, Frames 1-9 are on Tape only.

### Frame

### Content

10 Read the following words:  
(1) kháa (2) nâan (3) phâat (4) máa  
(5) wâa (6) thâa (7) kháan (8) mâak

11 Write the words you hear below:  
(1) (2) (3) (4)  
(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) phâa (2) náam (3) máa (4) thâa  
(5) láa (6) náa (7) mâak (8) kháan

Part II, Section 3, Frames 1-5 are on Tape only.

6 This word is written as follows phít

7 Write this word: \_\_\_\_\_

Answer: phít

8 This word is written phít  
What is the pitch contour on this word?

9 Do these two words sound the same?

10 Do these two words sound the same?

11 True or false? The symbol / ` / is used to indicate low pitch contour.

Answer: True

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- | <u>Frame</u>                   | <u>Content</u>  |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 12                             | The symbol / ' / is used to indicate <u>high falling</u> pitch contour. True or false?  |
| Answer:                        | True  |
| 13                             | /ph/ is used to transcribe a sound that is like the 'p' in the English word <u>pit</u> . True or false?   |
| Answer:                        | True  |
| Frames 14-17 are on Tape only. |   |
| 18                             | This word is written <u>khâat</u>   |
| 19                             | This word is written <u>khàat</u>   |
| 20                             | Transcribe this word: _____   |
| Answer:                        | khâat   |
| 21                             | Transcribe this word: _____   |
| Answer:                        | khàat   |
| 22                             | Pronounce these words after the tape:<br>(1) phít (2) khâat (3) khàat (4) phít (5) khàat<br>(6) phít (7) phít (8) khâat (9) phít (10) khàat                 |
| 23                             | Read these words. Check your responses with the tape.<br>(1) phít (2) khâat (3) khàat (4) phít (5) khàat<br>(6) phít (7) phít (8) khâat (9) phít (10) khàat |

Part II, Section 3, Frames 24-30 are on Tape only.

- 31 Read the words below:
- (1) phàa (2) mǎa (3) thàan (4) thǎam  
(5) thàan (6) khǎan (7) nǎam (8) nǎa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
32	Write the words you hear in the space below: (1)            (2)            (3)            (4) (5)            (6)            (7)            (8)

Answers: (1) phàan (2) mǎa (3) phàa (4) khǎan  
(5) nǎa (6) phàat (7) thǎa (8) thàaŋ

Part III, Section 1, Frames 1-23 are on Tape only.

24 In the special phonetic alphabet used in the Thai Basic Course, aspirated t is written th (The h stands for aspiration).

25 How would you write this word in the special alphabet?

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer: thaa

Frames 26-36 are on the Tape only.

37 The word meaning 'eye' is written taa in the special phonetic alphabet.

38 Write these words in a phonetic transcription as you hear them.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: 1. taa 2. thaa 3. thaa 4. taa  
5. taa 6. thaa 7. taa 8. thaa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 1 Drill, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

Frame

Content

- 11 Listen to the following words as they are pronounced on the tape:
- (1) thaa (2) taa (3) tûu (4) thûu  
(5) tii (6) thii (7) taa (8) thaa  
(9) taan (10) thaan (11) tii (12) thii  
(13) thaa (14) tii (15) tûu (16) thûu  
(17) thaan (18) tii

- 12 Listen to a series of Thai words. If a word begins with an aspirated t, write th in the space beside its number; if it begins with an unaspirated t, write t after its number.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. \_\_\_\_\_

- Answers: 1. t 2. th 3. t 4. th 5. t  
6. th 7. th 8. th 9. t 10. t

- 13 Transcribe the words you hear in the spaces below:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. \_\_\_\_\_ 11. \_\_\_\_\_ 12. \_\_\_\_\_  
13. \_\_\_\_\_ 14. \_\_\_\_\_ 15. \_\_\_\_\_ 16. \_\_\_\_\_

- Answers: 1. taa 2. thaan 3. taan 4. thaa 5. thaan  
6. thii 7. too 8. tii 9. thoo 10. taa  
11. tii 12. thaan 13. thaa 14. taan 15. thaan  
16. taa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 2, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
5	It begins with an <u>unaspirated t</u> (it doesn't have a puff of air after it) and it is written <u>tii</u> in the special alphabet.

Frames 6-8 are on Tape only.

9	It begins with <u>d</u> and is written <u>dii</u>
---	---

Frames 10-14 are on Tape only.

15 Identify the following words by writing d, t, or th in the blank by their numbers, after you hear them on tape.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)

Answers: 1. d    2. th    3. th    4. t    5. d  
6. th    7. d    8. t    9. th    10. d

Part III, Section 3, Frame 1-5 are on Tape only.

6 This word is written phaa.  
The 'h' after the 'p' shows that the 'p' is aspirated.

7 Does this word begin with an 'aspirated p'?

8 How would you write this word?: \_\_\_\_\_

Answer: phaa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Frames 9-18 are on Tape only.

19 The word meaning 'father's elder sister' is written pâa in the special writing system used in the text. Listen to it.

20 The word meaning 'cloth' is written phâa

21 You will now hear several repetitions of these two words. As you hear each one, write it in transcription in the space below:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: (1) pâa (2) pâa (3) phâa (4) pâa  
(5) phâa (6) phâa (7) pâa (8) phâa

Part III, Section 3 Drill, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

11 Listen to a series of Thai words. If a word begins with an aspirated p, write ph in the space beside its number; if it begins with an unaspirated p, write p after its number.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_ 5. \_\_\_\_\_  
6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_ 9. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: 1. p 2. ph 3. ph 4. ph 5. p 6. ph 7. p  
8. p 9. ph 10. p

12 Listen to the following words as they are pronounced on the tape:

1. pâaj 2. phûu 3. pàa 4. pâa 5. pàa  
6. pûu 7. phaan 8. phàa 9. phâa 10. phàn  
11. paan 12. phâa 13. phaan 14. pîi 15. phǎi

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Frame

### Content

13 Write the words you hear in the phonetic transcription in the spaces below:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. \_\_\_\_\_ 11. \_\_\_\_\_ 12. \_\_\_\_\_  
13. \_\_\_\_\_ 14. \_\_\_\_\_ 15. \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: 1. phaa 2. p<sup>h</sup>aa 3. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 4. paan 5. phaan  
6. p<sup>h</sup>aa 7. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 8. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 9. p<sup>h</sup>aa 10. p<sup>h</sup>aa  
11. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 12. p<sup>h</sup>uu 13. ph<sup>h</sup>uu 14. p<sup>h</sup>aaɰ 15. phaa

Part III, Section 4, Frames 1-8 are on Tape only.

9 Read the following words and check your readings with the tape.

(1) p<sup>h</sup>aa (2) b<sup>h</sup>aa (3) p<sup>h</sup>aa (4) b<sup>h</sup>aa (5) p<sup>h</sup>aa

10 A pair of words will be spoken, if they sound the same, say 'Same'; if different, say 'Different'.

11 Look at the following words as they are read on the tape. Notice in particular the tone marks above the vowels;

(1) p<sup>h</sup>it (2) baɰ (3) b<sup>h</sup>aan (4) p<sup>h</sup>aaɰ (5) p<sup>h</sup>aaɰ  
(6) p<sup>h</sup>aa (7) b<sup>h</sup>aa (8) b<sup>h</sup>aaɰ (9) p<sup>h</sup>aa (10) b<sup>h</sup>it  
(11) paa

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## Frame

## Content

12 Write the words you hear on the tape in the spaces below:

(1)            (2)            (3)            (4)            (5)  
(6)            (7)            (8)            (9)            (10)

Answers: 1. p̄aa 2. b̄aa 3. p̄aa 4. b̄aa 5. paa  
6. b̄aan 7. paan 8. b̄aan 9. p̄aat 10. p̄aak

Note: If you didn't get most of them right including the correct tone mark, use a clean piece of paper and repeat the drill, as well as frame 11 above.

Part III, Section 4 Drill, Frames 1 and 2 are on Tape only.

3 Read the words below. Check with the tape for pronunciation.

(1) baan (2) p̄et (3) b̄aat (4) ph̄uu  
(5) ph̄ăn (6) b̄aa (7) pii (8) ph̄aa  
(9) paan (10) baan (11) b̄aan (12) ph̄at  
(13) p̄aa (14) plaa (15) p̄aaj

4 Write the words you hear in transcription below:

(1)            (2)            (3)            (4)  
(5)            (6)            (7)            (8)  
(9)            (10)

Answers: (1) paa (2) ph̄aa (3) baan (4) p̄aa (5) pen  
(6) phaa (7) b̄aa (8) ph̄aan (9) ph̄it (10) plaa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 5, Frames 1-7 are on Tape only.

### Frame

### Content

8 In transcription aspirated k is written kh. The 'h' stands for the air stream. Write the symbol for the initial sound in these words:

(1) (2) (3) (4)

Answer: To all 4: kh

Frames 9-12 are on Tape only.

13 Unaspirated k is written 'k'. In the spaces below write the symbol for the initial consonant sound in these words:

(1) (2) (3) (4)

Answer: In each case is k.

Frames 14-17 are on Tape only.

18 Listen to these words. If a word begins with aspirated k, write kh opposite its number; if unaspirated k, write k.

(1) (2) (3) (4)  
(5) (6)

Answers: 1. kh, 2. k, 4. kh, 5. k, 6. kh

19 Read the words below. Check your responses with the tape:

(1) kàap (2) khìi (3) kìn (4) kaan  
(5) kàp (6) klâj (7) khâan (8) kûn  
(9) kàj (10) khàat (11) khaa (12) kâan

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Frame

### Content

- 20 Write these words:
- |     |      |      |      |
|-----|------|------|------|
| (1) | (2)  | (3)  | (4)  |
| (5) | (6)  | (7)  | (8)  |
| (9) | (10) | (11) | (12) |
- Answers: (1) kaan (2) khaa (3) kâaŋ (4) khàp  
(5) khâaŋ (6) khǎn (7) kàj (8) kâan  
(9) khâaŋ (10) klaj (11) khàat (12) kàp

Part III, Section 6, Frames 1-9 are on Tape only.

- 10 The symbol ch is used to write the initial consonant in these words. The 'c' indicates the sound is made at the hard palate ('the ceiling of the mouth') and the 'h' indicates that there is a stream of air after the 'c'. Write the initial consonant of these words in the spaces below:
- |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| (1) | (2) | (3) | (4) |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
- The answer in each case above is ch. (Don't forget: 'c' for 'ceiling' and 'h' for aspiration.)
- 11 The initial sound in this Thai word is also made with the tongue on the hard palate (i.e. 'the ceiling' of the mouth).
- 12 There is no aspiration after the initial consonant.
- 13 This sound that is made at the hard palate and is without aspiration is written 'c'. Write the initial sound of these words in the space below:
- |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| (1) | (2) | (3) | (4) |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Frame

### Content

Answers  
to 13: (1) c (2) c (3) c (4) c

Frames 14-19 are on Tape only.

20 Read the following words:

(1) chàt (2) càk (3) caŋ (4) chan  
(5) châat (6) cuan (7) châaw (8) cèt  
(9) cèp (10) chàp (11) càak (12) càt  
(13) chaa (14) caŋ (15) cam

21 Write the following words in the spaces below:

(1) (2) (3) (4)  
(5) (6) (7) (8)  
(9) (10) (11) (12)  
(13) (14)

Answers: (1) càak (2) cham (3) cèt (4) châat  
(5) chin (6) câm (7) com (8) còp  
(9) choŋ (10) chaan (11) còt (12) coom  
(13) caan (14) chàt

Part III, Section 7, Frames 1-3 are on Tape only.

4 You can hear the quality of this sound easily by saying ing several times. This sound is called a velar nasal and is written ŋ in phonetic writing. Please observe that ŋ is like n with a long bent tail on it.

5 The velar nasal /ŋ/ occurs finally in many English words (bring, sing, etc.) and it also occurs medially in some words (singer, etc.), but it never occurs in initial position.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
6	This Thai word ends in a velar nasal like <u>bring</u> in English.
7	What sound do these words end in?
Answer:	ŋ
8	The final sound in these words would be written /ŋ/. True or false?
9	These words end in a nasal sound also but not the velar nasal. Listen to these words. What is the final sound?
10	Now you will hear some pairs of words. The first member of the pair ends in the velar nasal, the second, in <u>n</u> . Listen to the difference.
11	The velar nasal occurs at the beginning of some Thai words. Listen to these examples:
12	Contrast these words beginning with /ŋ/ with those beginning with /n/.

Frame 13-16 are on Tape only.

- 17 Read the following words:
- (1) ɲaa (2) ɲaan (3) ɲaam (4) ɲan  
(5) ɲuu (6) ɲâaj (7) ɲœn (8) ɲaj
- 18 Write the following words:
- (1) (2) (3) (4)

Answers: (1) ɲaa (2) ɲaam (3) ɲâaj (4) ɲaj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 8, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
5.	If you said 'an old oak' (with clear separation between <u>old</u> and <u>oak</u> ), what you said would be written phonetically as follows:  æn owld ? owk (The symbol ? represents the glottal stop)

Frames 6-9 are on Tape only.

10	Being careful to put a glottal stop at the end of each syllable, pronounce the following words when you hear the number:  (1) ná (2) sǐ (3) phrá (4) há (5) mí  (Note: The glottal stop symbol is not usually written after short vowels since its occurrence is predictable.)
----	--

Part III, Section 9, Frames 1-15 are on Tape only.

16	Listen to these words and write the final stops (p, t, or k) in the space below:  (1) (2) (3) (4) (5)  (6) (7) (8) (9) (10)
----	---

Answers: (1) p (2) t (3) k (4) p (5) k  
(6) t (7) k (8) p (9) p (10) k

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 10, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>			
5	Write the final sound of these words in the space below (use ? for glottal stop):			
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)

Answers: 1. p 2. k 3. ? 4. t 5. ? 6. t 7. t  
8. ? 9. p 10. ?

Frames 6-9 are on Tape only.

10	Write the final sound of these words below:			
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)

Answers: 1. âa 2. t 3. k 4. âa 5. p 6. k 7. p  
8. âa 9. k 10. âa

Part IV, Section 1, Frames 1-2 are on Tape only.

- 3 The diphthong is made up of two parts:  
a as in bah plus a glide like w  
It would be written /haw/ in phonetic transcription.

Frames 4-6 are on Tape only.

- 7 The diphthong in this word could be written /aw/.  
The first part is a and the last part is a w glide.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Frames 8-10 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
11	The diphthong in this word could be written <u>aaw</u> . The first part is a long <u>a</u> and the second part is a <u>w</u> glide.
12	The <u>aa</u> and the <u>w</u> glide are about equally loud but the <u>aa</u> is considerably longer than the <u>w</u> glide. This is called a <u>long diphthong</u> .

Frames 13-18 are on Tape only.

- 19 Read the following words:
- (1) khâw (2) chaaw (3) mâw (4) plàaw  
(5) sǎaw (6) câw (7) kâw (8) cháaw
- 20 Write these words in the space below:
- (1) (2) (3) (4)  
(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) khǎaw (2) sâw (3) cháaw (4) lâw  
(5) nǎaw (6) khâaw (7) raw (8) khâw

Part IV, Section 2.

- 1 This word ends in a diphthong.
- 2 The diphthong in this word is written /aj/ which means that it begins with an ah sound and ends with an 'ee' glide.
- 3 The ah sound and the ee glide are about equally loud, but the ee glide is longer.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Frames 4-9 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
10	The long diphthong in these words is written <u>aa</u> . Write the words you hear below:  (1)            (2)            (3)            (4)  (5)            (6)

Answers: 1. chaa*j* 2. daa*j* 3. naa*j* 4. tha*a**j* 5. kh*aa**j*  
6. ba*aa**j*

Frames 11-13 are on Tape only.

14	Read the words below and check your responses with the tape:  (1) pa <i>j</i> (2) d <i>aa</i> <i>j</i> (3) cha <i>a</i> <i>j</i> (4) ha <i>aa</i> <i>j</i> (5) ba <i>aa</i> <i>j</i> (6) tha <i>a</i> <i>j</i>
15	Write the words you hear below:  (1)            (2)            (3)            (4)  (5)            (6)            (7)            (8)  (9)            (10)

Answers: 1. na*a**j* 2. d*aa**j* 3. cha*a**j* 4. klaa*a**j* 5. ha*aa**j*  
6. kh*aa**j* 7. ja*aa**j* 8. tha*a**j* 9. kl*aa**j* 10. ba*aa**j*

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part IV, Section 3, Frames 1-14 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
15	Read the following words: (1) càak (2) chán (3) faŋ (4) sǎam (5) ráan (6) khan (7) thaan (8) lǎŋ (9) phâak (10) wan
16	Write the following words: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. wǎŋ 2. khâaŋ 3. tàaŋ 4. phan 5. láan  
6. ɲaan 7. tham 8. dâam 9. thaaŋ 10. caŋ

Part V, Section 1, Frames 1-13 are on Tape only.

Part V, Section 2, Frames 1-8 are on Tape only.

- 9 A syllable in Thai has 4 parts to it: an initial consonant, a vocalism, an optional final consonant and a pitch contour. Here are examples of each of the types of syllables:
- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| (a) Consonant plus long vowel             | (phaa)  |
| (b) Consonant plus long vowel plus nasal  | (phàan) |
| (c) Consonant plus long vowel plus glide  | (fàaj)  |
| (d) Consonant plus long vowel plus stop   | (khàat) |
| (e) Consonant plus short vowel plus nasal | (phan)  |
| (f) Consonant plus short vowel plus glide | (paj)   |
| (g) Consonant plus short vowel plus stop  | (kàt)   |

Frames 10-14 are on Tape only.

This is the end of The Programmed  
Introduction to Thai Phonology.

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## REFERENCE CHART OF SPECIAL SYMBOLS USED IN THAI BASIC COURSE

When Thais write Thai they use the regular writing system, which is a rather complex system based on Sanscrit. After you have been studying the spoken language for 6 to 8 weeks, you will begin to learn to read in this system. Since it is fairly difficult to learn regular Thai orthography, it is considered inadvisable to require you to learn it in addition to learning the spoken language at the beginning; therefore, a special system of transcription is used throughout the first volume of the Thai Basic Course. In this system regular Roman letters plus a few phonetic symbols are used. The system is completely regular, and you will learn to read it rather quickly. In fact, if you have already finished the Programmed Introduction, you may already know most of it. Please keep in mind that no writing system reflects accurately and precisely the sound system of a language, so rely on your ears and not on any written symbols (including the regular Thai orthography) for the pronunciation of Thai words and sentences.

It will help you understand the summary of the transcription system that follows, if you are aware of 3 conventions that are used in it: (1) Vowel length is indicated by a doubling of the vowel symbol, (2) An 'h' after an initial consonant indicates that the consonant is 'aspirated', and (3) Pitch contours are indicated by placing certain kinds of symbols above vowels; thus phâa refers to an 'aspirated p', followed by 'long a', which has a 'high falling' pitch contour.

### REFERENCE CHART

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
b	b	similar to English <u>b</u> in <u>Samba</u> .
p	p (after <u>s</u> )	like the <u>p</u> in <u>spy</u> (no puff of air after p)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
ph	p	like the <u>p</u> in <u>pie</u> (puff of air after p)
d	d	similar to English <u>d</u> in <u>Sunday</u>
t	t (after <u>s</u> )	like the <u>t</u> in <u>sty</u> (no puff of air after <u>t</u> )
th	t	like the <u>t</u> in <u>tie</u> (puff of air after <u>t</u> )
k	k (after <u>s</u> )	like the <u>k</u> in <u>ski</u>
kh	k	like the <u>k</u> in <u>Korea</u>
c	..	between English <u>jet</u> and <u>Chet</u>
ch	ch	between <u>ch</u> in <u>cheat</u> and <u>sh</u> in <u>sheet</u>
r	r	<u>r</u> as in <u>red</u> may be used (rarely occurs in Bangkok dialect)
l	l	<u>l</u> as in <u>long</u>
m	m	<u>m</u> as in <u>me</u>
h	h	<u>h</u> as in <u>hen</u>
f	f	<u>f</u> as in <u>fun</u>
s	s	<u>s</u> as in <u>see</u>
n	n	<u>n</u> as <u>need</u>
ŋ	-ng (only final)	like <u>-ng</u> in <u>sing</u>
w	w	<u>w</u> as in <u>we</u>
j	y	<u>y</u> as in <u>yet</u>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
i	i	<u>i</u> in <u>sip</u>
ii	ee, ea	<u>ee</u> as in <u>see</u>
e	e	<u>e</u> as in <u>pet</u>
ee	a, ay	<u>a</u> as in <u>made</u>
ɛ	a	<u>a</u> as in <u>and</u>
ɛɛ	a	<u>a</u> as in <u>fan</u>
y	..	<u>u</u> in <u>sugar</u> is somewhat similar
yy	..	....
ə	..	somewhat similar to <u>-er</u> in <u>baker</u> but shorter and without 'r' quality
əə	..	similar to <u>ə</u> but longer. British pronunciation of <u>sir</u>
a	u	somewhat similar to <u>u</u> in <u>fun</u>
aa	a	<u>a</u> as in <u>father</u>
u	oo	<u>oo</u> as in <u>look</u>
uu	ou	<u>ou</u> as in <u>you</u>
o	o	<u>o</u> as in <u>cone</u> but shorter
oo	o	<u>o</u> as in <u>so</u>
o	..	....
oo	aw	<u>aw</u> as in <u>law</u>
iw	..	....

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

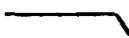
<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
ew	..	..
eew	..	..
ɛw	..	..
aw	ow	<u>ow</u> as in <u>cow</u>
aaw	ow	<u>ow</u> as in <u>cow</u> (longer than aw)
uj.	..	..
ooj	..	..
oj	oy	<u>oy</u> as in <u>toy</u>
ooj	oy	<u>oy</u> as in <u>toy</u> (longer than oj)
aj	y, i	<u>y</u> as in <u>my</u>
aaj	y, i	<u>y</u> as in <u>my</u> (longer than aj)
ia	ee, ie, e	<u>ee</u> as in <u>beer</u> (without <u>r</u> )
ya	..	..
ua	oo	<u>oo</u> as in <u>poor</u> (without <u>r</u> )
iaw	eo	<u>eo</u> as in <u>Leo</u>
yaj	..	..

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## THAI TONE CHART

The shapes, names and symbols used for five significant pitch contours in Thai are given below:

Written Examples:	khaa	khàa	khâa	kháa	khǎa
Approximate Pitch Range					
Name of Contour	Mid Level	Low	High Falling	High	Low Rising
Symbol	No Mark				

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON ONE

### 1.0 BASIC DIALOG: Greeting Someone

- A. sawàtdii khráp                      Hello.  
    khun sabaajdií rý khráp            How are you?
- B. phǒm sabaajdií khráp                I'm fine.  
    khòopkhun                            Thank you.  
    léew khun la khráp                  And you?
- A. phǒm sabaajdií khráp                I'm fine.

### 1.1 NOTE ON THE DIALOG

sawàtdii is a very common salute in Thailand. It may be used for greeting someone or for leavetaking. It is usually accompanied by a 'wai' (wâj).

The 'wai' is illustrated in the picture below. The height of the hands in the 'wai' is in inverse ratio to the age and social position of the participants. In the picture below the woman is older and is of equal or higher social status than the man.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) phǒm, dichǎn, khun, and khǎw are pronouns in Thai.  
phǒm means 'I' and is used by males only.

dichán or dihán (or in formal usage dichǎn) means 'I' and is used only by females.

khun is a polite form for 'you'.

kháw (in slow distinct speech khǎw) means 'he, she, or they'.

- b) sabaajdi 'to be well, to be in good health' is a verb. The verb in Thai does not undergo changes in form, hence sabaajdi might be translated 'am, is, are fine' according to its subject.
- c) The subject precedes the verb in Thai, hence the sentence phǒm sabaajdi is the most common type of statement.
- d) Statements may be changed into questions by adding a question word at the end.

Statement: khun sabaajdi 'You are well.'

Question: khun sabaajdi rǎy 'Are you well?'

- e) rǎy is a question word that is used to ask for verification. It may occur after words, phrases, or sentences. It is usually unstressed and may be pronounced in any of the following ways:

When sentence final: lǎy, lǎə, rǎy, rǎə, ǎə

Before kháp (khá): rý, lý, lé, ré, é, ý

- f) kháp (or khá) is a particle used as the final element of statements or questions. It indicates that the speaker is male. It is often pronounced há? in rapid speech.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- g) khâ is a particle used as the final element of a statement. It indicates that the speaker is female. It may be pronounced hâ in rapid speech.
- h) khá is similar in usage to khâ except that it is used at the end of a question. In rapid speech há may be used instead of khá.
- i) The omission of the polite particles khráp, khâ, and khá may result in rather abrupt-sounding or impolite speech; it is, therefore, advisable to put one in at least once in each utterance.
- j) lěsw 'and' is used to connect sentences.
- k) lěsw (khun, kháw, etc.) la (khráp, khá) is a kind of echo type question; that is, it forms a question which is based on the previous statement.

Statement:        phǒm sabaajdii        'I'm fine.'

Echo question: lěsw khun la khráp    'And how are you?'

### 1.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Expansion Drill

sabaaj	(am) fine
sabaaj dii	(am) fine
phǒm sabaaj dii	I (male) am fine.
phǒm sabaaj dii khráp	I (male) am fine.
sabaaj	(am) fine
sabaaj dii	(am) fine
dichán sabaaj dii	I (female) am fine.
dichán sabaaj dii khâ	I (female) am fine.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>phǒm</u> sabaajdii khráp	<u>I</u> am fine.
<u>khun</u>	<u>khun</u> sabaajdii khráp	<u>You</u> are fine.
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> sabaajdii khráp	<u>He/she/they</u> is/are fine.
<u>khun</u>	<u>khun</u> sabaajdii khráp	<u>You</u> are fine.
<u>phǒm</u>	<u>phǒm</u> sabaajdii khráp	<u>I</u> am fine.

Repeat the drill using dichán / khâ for phǒm / khráp

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	léew <u>khun</u> la khráp	And <u>you</u> ?
<u>kháw</u>	léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp	And he?
<u>khun</u>	léew <u>khun</u> la khráp	And <u>you</u> ?
<u>kháw</u>	léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp	And <u>they</u> ?
<u>khun</u>	léew <u>khun</u> la khráp	And <u>you</u> ?

### d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>khun</u> la khráp
<u>kháw</u>	phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp
<u>khun</u>	phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>khun</u> la khráp
<u>kháw</u>	phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp
<u>khun</u>	phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>khun</u> la khráp

Repeat the drill using dichán / khá for phǒm / khráp.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

e) Transformation Drill (Change into questions with rǎy)

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Question</u>	
khun sabaajdi	khun sabaajdi <u>rǎy</u>	Are you well?
kháw sabaajdi	kháw sabaajdi <u>rǎy</u>	Is she well?
khun sabaajdi	khun sabaajdi <u>rǎy</u>	Are you well?
kháw sabaajdi	kháw sabaajdi <u>rǎy</u>	Are they well?

f) Dialog Variation Drill

If there are female members of the class, repeat the basic dialog using female pronouns and polite words.

### 1.4 EXERCISES

- a) Each person inquires about the health of the person next to him, to which that person replies that he is fine.
- b) The instructor asks each student how he is, and each student replies.
- c) Each student asks the instructor how he is, and the instructor responds.
- d) The instructor has student A ask student B how student C's health is, to which student B replies that it is good. (The instructor should continue this exercise until every student has asked and responded at least once.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1.5 VOCABULARY

dichăn, dichán	I (female speaker)
dii	(to be) good
khâ, hâ	polite particle, <u>statement</u> by a female
khá, há	polite particle, <u>question</u> by a female
khăw, kháw	he, she; they (third person, singular and plural). It does <u>not</u> refer to things.
khòopkhun	thank you
khráp, há?, kháp	polite particle, used in statements and questions by males
khun	you (singular only) polite form
la	question word
lěw	and (sentence connective)
phôm	I (male speaker)
rỷ, rý, lý, lý	question word
sabaajdii	to feel well, be in good health
sawàtdii	hello (used for greeting or leavetaking)

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON TWO

### 2.0 BASIC DIALOG: Finding Out Someone's Name

Prabas:	sawàtdii khráp phǒm chýy praphâat khǒothôot, khun chýy araj khráp.	Hello. My name is Prabas. Excuse me. What's your name?
John:	phǒm chýy cǒon khráp	My name's John.
Prabas:	khǒothôot, khun chýy araj nakhráp karunaa phûut ìik thii, dâj máj khráp	Excuse me. What's your name? Could you please repeat that?
John:	phǒm chýy cǒon khráp khǒothôot, khun praphâat naamsakun araj khráp	My name's John. Excuse me, Mr. Prabas what? (family name)
Prabas:	phǒm naamsakun rákthaj khráp khǒothôot, khun cǒon naamsakun samít, châj máj khráp	My family name's Rakthai. Excuse me, Mr. John Smith, isn't it?

---

NOTE: For female members of the class use Mary (mæerîi) and the appropriate pronouns and particles instead of John. If the instructor is female, malí may be used instead of praphâat with appropriate changes.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- John: mâj châj khráp                      No, it isn't.  
                 phôm naamsakun braawn        My family name's Brown.
- Prabas: cœn braaw rĕkhráp                John Brown, huh?
- John: khráp                                  That's right.

### 2.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) chÿy means 'name' or 'to be named' but refers only to the first or given name.
- b) naamsakun means 'family or last name'.
- c) khĕothĕot means 'excuse me' or 'pardon me' and is used in the same way as the English words.
- d) karunaa means 'please, kindly...' and is followed by a request form.
- e) lik thii 'again' means literally 'an additional time.'
- f) khun is a polite title that may be used with names of either sex. It is normally put before a person's given name, since that is the name that one is usually addressed by in Thailand.

khun aarii 'Miss Aree', khun thăawœn 'Mr. Thaworn',  
khun nonkhraan 'Mrs. Nongkran'

khun may be placed before the family names of foreigners, thus khun braawn 'Mr. Brown'.

### 2.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The word 'aj' 'what?' occupies the same position in the sentence as the word it refers to:

Question: khun chÿy araj                      'What's your name?'

Answer: phôm chÿy cœn                      'My name's John.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) When châj máj is added to a statement, it becomes a question. It is used when the speaker is seeking confirmation of something. It is very similar in usage to rÿy (see 1.2e) which it can replace in many situations.

Question: khun chÿy thǎawɔɔn, 'Your name's Thaworn,  
châj máj khráp isn't it?

Affirmative response:

châj khráp 'Yes, it is.'

Negative response:

mâj châj khráp 'No, it isn't.'

- c) If one wishes to disagree with a question with chÿy and give additional information, it can be done in either of the following ways:

Question: khun chÿy sǒmsàk, 'Your name's Somsak,  
châj máj khráp isn't it?'

Negative response 1:

mâj châj khráp 'No, it's not.'

phǒm chÿy prichaa<sup>1</sup> 'My name's Pricha.'

mâj châj sǒmsàk 'It isn't Somsak.'

Negative response 2:

phǒm chÿy prichaa 'My name's Pricha.'

phǒm mâj dâj chÿy 'I'm not named

sǒmsàk Somsak.'

Observe that mâj châj can occur before a name (a noun) but not before chÿy (a verb). mâj dâj must be used before chÿy.

---

<sup>1</sup>Do not use contrastive stress as you would in English ('My name's Prichaa. It isn't Somsak.').

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Questions ending with rǎy are normally answered affirmatively with khráp, which indicates that what the speaker assumed to be true is indeed true.

Question: khun chǎy praphâat-rǎykhráp 'You're named Prapas?'

Affirmative response:

khráp 'That's right.'

The usual negative response to questions with rǎy is mâj châj, thus

Question: khun chǎy prichaarǎykhráp '(You're) Pricha?'

Negative response:

mâj châj khráp 'No, I'm not.'  
(phǒm... chǎy...) I'm...

If one wishes to register strong disagreement with a rǎy question, he may respond with plàaw.

Question: khâw chǎy prichaarǎykhráp 'He's named Pricha?'

Negative response:

plàaw khráp, khâw mâj 'No, he's not named  
dâj chǎy prichaa Pricha. He's Somsak.'  
khâw chǎy sǒmsàk

### 2.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Expansion Drills

araj

araj khráp

chǎy araj khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khun chây araj khráp  
khǎothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
cǎon  
cǎon khráp  
chây cǎon khráp  
phǎm chây cǎon khráp  
  
araj  
araj khráp  
chây araj khráp  
kháw chây araj khráp  
  
dík  
dík khráp  
chây dík khráp  
kháw chây dík khráp

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drills

1.       A: khǎothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
      John: phǎm chây cǎon khráp
2.       A: khǎothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
      Mary: díchán chây mǎsríi khâ
3.       A: khǎothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
      Bill: phǎm chây bin khráp
4.       A: khǎothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
      George: phǎm chây cǎon khráp
5.       A: khǎothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
      Dick: phǎm chây dík khráp

---

<sup>1</sup>Whenever masculine pronouns and polite forms occur, the instructor may replace them with the equivalent feminine forms. To save space generally only the masculine forms will be given.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

c) Response Drill

The teacher asks the question khun chây araj (What's your name?) and each student responds with phǒm chây \_\_\_\_ --- (My name is \_\_\_\_.) giving his correct name.

d) Response Drill

The teacher has each student address the following question to him: khun chây araj and the teacher responds with his correct name.

e) Response Drill

Teacher asks each student the following question: khǎo-thoot, khun chây araj and each student responds with his correct name. phǒm chây \_\_\_\_\_.

f) Response Drill

Pairs of students take turns asking and answering the question: khǎothôot khun chây araj

g) Response Drill

Each student asks another student his name using an incorrect name, to which the student responds by giving his correct name.

h) Response Drill

The following question is to be asked using the real names of the students:

Question: khun chây (X), châj máj khráp?

Answer: châj khráp, phǒm chây (X)

i) Response Drill

Question: khun chây (X), châj máj khráp

Answer: mâj châj khráp, phǒm chây (Y)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### j) Response Drill

The question following may be used with the correct or incorrect name of the student addressed. The answer given will depend on the question.

Question: khun chây (X), châj máj khráp

Answer: máj châj khráp, phǒm chây (Y)  
châj khráp, phǒm chây (X).

Drills h, i, and j, may be repeated with khǒwthôt preceding each question if desired.

### k) Response Drill

The teacher has each student address to him the question khun chây (X), châj máj using an incorrect name to which he gives the following response:

máj châj khráp	That's not right,
phǒm chây (Y)	my name is Y.
máj châj (X)	It isn't X.

or

phǒm chây (Y)	My name is Y.
phǒm máj dâj chây (X)	My name isn't X.

### l) Transformation Drill (Use actual names of students.)

Student 1

phǒm chây coon  
dichán chây mserfi

Student 2

sawàtdii khráp, khun coon  
sawàtdii khráp, khun mserfi  
or sawàtdii khâ, khun mserfi

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m) Substitution Drill

Have the students (in pairs) participate in short dialogs like the model below using their actual names:

S-1: khun chây araj khráp            What's your name?

S-2: phǒm chây cǎon                My name's John.

S-1: cǎon rǎkhráp                    It's John, is it?

mâj châj cǎoc rǎkhráp                It isn't George?

S-2: mâj châj khráp                    No, it isn't.

### n) Expansion Drill

nakhráp                                (Question)

araj nakhráp                          What?

chây araj nakhráp                    What is your name?

nakhráp                                (Question)

araj nakhráp                          What?

naamsakun araj nakhráp              What's your family name?

nakhráp                                (Question)

araj nakhráp                          What?

wâa araj nakhráp                      ...

phûut wâa araj nakhráp              What did (you) say?

khun phûut wâa araj nakhráp        What did you say?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

o) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	khun chÿy araj nakhráp
kháw	kháw chÿy araj nakhráp
naamsakun	kháw naamsakun araj nakhráp
khǒothôot, khun	khǒothôot, khun naamsakun araj nakhráp
chÿy	khun chÿy araj nakhráp
kháw	kháw chÿy araj nakhráp
naamsakun	kháw naamsakun araj nakhráp
khǒothôot, khun	khǒothôot, khun naamsakun araj nakhráp
chÿy	khun chÿy araj nakhráp

p) Transformation Drill (Asking for repetitions)

MODEL: Instructor: phǒm chÿy praphâat khráp

Student: khǒothôot, khun chÿy araj nakhráp

karunaa phûut ìik thii, dâj máj khráp

Instructor: phǒm chÿy praphâat khráp

Cue: 1. kháw chÿy prichaa.

2. dichán naamsakun kamphuu

3. kháw naamsakun rákthaj

4. phǒm chÿy sǒmsàk

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### q) Response Drill

**Affirmative:**    Instructor:

brawn rěkh ráp            It's Brown, is it?  
Yes.

Student:

khráp                      Yes (It is).

**Negative:**        Instructor:

brawn rěkh ráp            It's Brown, is it?  
No.

Student:

mâj châj khráp            No (It isn't).

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
yes	chÿy coon rěkh ráp	khráp
no	khun thăawoon rěkh ráp	mâj châj khráp
yes	kháw ǎə khráp	khráp
no	samít ǎə khráp	mâj châj khráp
yes	naamsakun samít rěkh ráp	khráp

### 2.4 EXERCISES (Students are to take the roles below:)

- a) Mr. Jones meets Mr. Smith on the street. They greet each other and inquire about each other's health.
- b) Mr. Wichai meets Miss Nongkhraan and says, 'Excuse me. Isn't your name Absorn'. Miss Nongkhraan says that is not correct but that her correct name is Nongkhraan.
- c) Mr. Prichaa sees Mr. Wichai and says, 'Hello, Mr. Somsak.' Mr. Wichai says, 'Excuse me.' My name is not Somsak. It's Wichai'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Mr. Smith meets a Thai at the Embassy and says, 'Excuse me. What is your name?' The man says, 'My name is Prichaa. What's yours?' Smith gives his name.
- e) Miss Nongkhraan accidentally bumps Mr. Wichai and asks his pardon.

The teacher asks the students to bring in pictures of well-known persons. In class the students ask each other the names of the persons pictured, sometimes intentionally using the incorrect name.

### 2.5 VOCABULARY

araj	what (question word)
lik	in addition, more
lik thii	again, one more time
bin	Bill (name)
braaw(n)	Brown (name)
châj	to be so, to be it, be the one (meant, intended)
châj máj	Isn't it so? Isn't it the one?
chÿy	name, to be named
cóc	George (name)
coon	John (name)
dâj máj	Can (you)? Could (you)? Are (you) able to?
dík	Dick (name)
kamphuu	Kambhu (Thai family name)
karunaa	please, kindly
khǎothôot	excuse me
khun	Mr, Mrs., Miss (a polite title)
malí	Malee (Thai girl's name)
mâj châj	It is not so. It is not the one (meant). (Negative response)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mǎj, máj	question word
mæɛrɸi	Mary (name)
na, ná	particle used to make the question sound less abrupt
naamsakun	family name
phûut	to speak, talk, say
plàaw	No (it isn't so). Particle indicating strong disagreement with the information content of the question)
praphâat	Prabas (Thai male first name)
prichaa	Pricha (Thai male first name)
rákthaj	Rakthai (Thai family name)
samít	Smith (name)
thǎawoon	Thaworn (Thai male first name)
thii	instance, case, time
wâa	that (when used with verbs like <u>phûut</u> )

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

phûut ìik thii	Please repeat.
phûut taam phǒm/dichǎn	Please repeat after me.
fan	Please listen.
khun phûut phít	You said it wrong.
khun phûut thùuk lésw	You said it right.
lǒɔŋ phûut ìik thii	Try to say it.
sǎŋ khun phít	Your tone is wrong.
sǎŋ khun thùuk	Your tone is right.
phûut phaasǎa thaj	Please speak in Thai.
jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrít	Don't speak English.
phûut phrǒom kan	Please say it in chorus
tǒɔp thii la khon	Answer one at a time.
phûut dan dan nǒɔj	Speak louder.
pèet nanŋsǎy	Open your book.
pít nanŋsǎy	Close your book.
jàa duu nanŋsǎy	Don't look at your book.

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON THREE

### 3.0 BASIC DIALOG: Identifying Objects

A: khun mii phěnthîi máj khráp	Do you have a map?
B: mii khráp	I do.
A: dii máj khráp	Is it good?
B: dii khráp	It's good.
A: nîi araj khráp	What's this?
B: nân rûup khráp	That's a picture.
A: rûup araj khráp	A picture of what?
B: rûup wát khráp	A picture of a temple.
A: sŭaj máj khráp	Is it pretty?
B: sŭaj khráp	It's pretty.
A: lésw nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	And what's this called?
B: rîak wâa nâatàaŋ khráp	It's called a 'window'.
A: khǒothôot, jàa pèet nâatàaŋ khráp	Excuse me. Don't open the window.
B: khǒothôot, khun phûut wâa araj khráp phǒm mâj khâwcaj karunaa phûut cháa cháa nòoj, dâj máj khráp	Excuse me. What did you say? I didn't understand. Could you please speak slowly.
A: phǒm phûut wâa jàa pèet nâatàaŋ	I said, 'Don't open the window.'

---

NOTE: The instructor should have the objects referred to before him and should point to them when necessary.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 3.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) wát is used to refer to the Buddhist temple compound. This includes the temple and other related buildings in the compound (usually fenced in with a gate). It may be translated as 'church, etc.' when referring to places of worship for other religions.
- b) nǎaw means 'cold' when referring to the weather or a person's feeling about the weather.
- c) cháa means 'slow(ly)'. It is repeated for emphasis.
- d) nîi refers to a place near the speaker; nân away from the speaker; and nôn, still farther away from the speaker, but within view.

### 3.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) dii, sǔaj, nǎaw, and rón are called stative verbs in Thai. They can be translated as 'to be good', 'to be pretty', 'to be cold', and 'to be hot'.

- b) When the meaning is clear the subject of the sentence may be omitted, thus:

Question: mii tó máj khráp            Do (you) have a table?

Answer: mii khráp                            (I) do.

- c) A negative sentence is formed by repeating mâj before the main verb:

mâj mii                                        'don't have'

mâj dii                                        '(is) not good', etc.

- d) máj (in slow speech mǎj) is a question word that is used when a simple YES or NO answer is expected. The affirmative answer is a repetition of the main verb:

Question: mii nánsǔy máj khráp    Do you have a book?

Answer: mii khráp                            I do.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

In the negative answer mâj is repeated before the main verb:

Question: mi nánsǎy máj                    Do you have a book?  
Answer: mâj mi khráp                    (No) I don't.

- e) There is no distinction in form between the singular and plural of nouns in Thai, thus tó means 'a table' or 'tables' (in general).

However, plurality in general may be indicated by other forms in the Noun Phrase, thus:

tó dii dii                    'some good tables'

where repeating the stative verb dii serves this purpose.

- f) When jâa 'don't' is repeated before a command or request form, it is changed into a negative command or request:

pèet pratuu khráp            Open the door.  
jâa pèet pratuu khráp       Don't open the door.

- g) After verbs like phûut 'to say', rîak 'to be called', etc. wâa must be used.

phǒm phûut wâa jâa pèet pratuu    'I said, "Don't open the door."'

- h) When nîi 'this', nân 'that', or nôn 'that one over there' is the subject, the sentence has no verb expressed.

nîi tó                    'This (is) a table.'

(Note: In rather formal usage khyy 'to be' could be used.)

- i) When Yes-No type questions are asked in the negative, rǎy is the question word used. mâj can not be used.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Negative question:

roonrian mâj dii rÿy 'Isn't the school any good?'

Confirmatory response:

khráp 'No, it isn't.'

Since khráp is used to indicate that the information in the question is correct, and the information was given in the negative, it must be translated as 'No, it isn't.' plàaw as a response would indicate that the information in the question was incorrect, and it would be translated something like 'On the contrary!'. plàaw is usually followed by a sentence giving the correct information:

Negative question:

aahaan mâj dii  
rěkhráp 'The food isn't any good, huh?'

Contradictory response:

plàaw khráp, dii 'On the contrary it's good.'

### 3.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>nân</u> araj khráp	What's that?
<u>nôn</u>	<u>nôn</u> araj khráp	What's that (over there)?
<u>nîi</u>	<u>nîi</u> araj khráp	What's this?
<u>nân</u>	<u>nân</u> araj khráp	What's that?
<u>nôn</u>	<u>nôn</u> araj khráp	What's that (over there)?
<u>nîi</u>	<u>nîi</u> araj khráp	What's this?
<u>nân</u>	<u>nân</u> araj khráp	What's that?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1) nân araj khráp (nân) pratuu khráp	'door'
2) nân araj khráp (nân) nâatàaŋ khráp	'window'
3) nân araj khráp (nân) tó khráp	'table'
4) nân araj khráp (nân) náŋsŷy khráp	'book'
5) nân araj khráp (nân) samùt khráp	'notebook'
6) nân araj khráp (nân) phěenthîi khráp	'map'
7) nân araj khráp (nân) kradaandam khráp	'blackboard'
8) nân araj khráp (nân) dînsǒo khráp	'pencil'
9) nân araj khráp (nân) pàakkaa khráp	'pen'

Note: The instructor points at the object referred to during the drill.)

### c) Response Drill

While pointing at the objects referred to in Drill b, the instructor asks questions and the students respond as in the following example:

Instructor: nîi araj khráp      Student: nân náŋsŷy khráp

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1) nân rîak wâa araj khráp	pratuu khráp
2) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	náŋsŷy khráp
3) nôon rîak wâa araj khráp	kradaandam khráp
4) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	tó khráp
5) nân rîak wâa araj khráp	naalikaa khráp
6) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	pàakkaa khráp
7) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	kâwîi khráp

Note: The instructor points at the object referred to during the drill.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

While pointing at the objects in Drill d, the instructor asks questions and the students respond as in the following example:

Instructor:   nân rîak wâa araj                   What's that called?  
                  khráp

Student:    nân rîak wâa                        That's a blackboard.  
                  kradaandam khráp

### f) Substitution Response Drill

The instructor points at one of the objects previously named, and two students carry on an exchange like the following:

Instructor:   (Pointing at the door of the classroom)

Student 1:   nân rîak wâa araj khráp

Student 2:   pratau khráp

Student 1:   (nân) rîak wâa pratau rĕkhráp

Student 2:   khráp

### g) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

	khun mi <u>phĕenthĕi</u> máj khráp	Do you have a <u>map</u> ?
<u>nánsŷy</u>	khun mi <u>nánsŷy</u> máj khráp	Do you have a <u>book</u> ?
<u>samùt</u>	khun mi <u>samùt</u> máj khráp	Do you have a <u>notebook</u> ?
<u>dinsŏ</u>	khun mi <u>dinsŏ</u> máj khráp	Do you have a <u>pencil</u> ?
<u>naalikaa</u>	khun mi <u>naalikaa</u> máj khráp	Do you have a <u>watch</u> ?
<u>burĭi</u>	khun mi <u>burĭi</u> máj khráp	Do you have a <u>cigarette</u> ?
<u>ŋəən</u>	khun mi <u>ŋəən</u> máj khráp	Do you have <u>money</u> ?
<u>nánsŷyphim</u>	khun mi <u>nánsŷyphim</u> máj khráp	Do you have a <u>newspaper</u> ?
<u>kradaat</u>	khun mi <u>kradaat</u> máj khráp	Do you have <u>paper</u> ?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	<u>Response</u>
yes	khun mi nánsŷy máj khráp	mi khráp
no	khun mi kradàat máj khráp	mâj mi khráp
yes	khun mi samùt máj khráp	mi khráp
no	khun mi dīnsŷo máj khráp	mâj mi khráp
yes	khun mi phěnthīi máj khráp	mi khráp
no	khun mi burīi máj khráp	mâj mi khráp
no	khun mi rûup máj khráp	mâj mi khráp

### i) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
yes	kháw dii máj	dii khráp
no	kháw dii máj	mâj dii khráp
yes	roonriian dii máj	dii khráp
no	khun rŷon máj	mâj rŷon khráp
yes	aakàat năaw máj	năaw khráp
no	aahăan dii máj	mâj dii khráp
yes	rûup sŷaj máj	sŷaj khráp
no	nánsŷy dii máj	mâj dii khráp

### j) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	phěnthīi dii máj	Is the <u>map</u> good?
<u>nánsŷy</u>	<u>nánsŷy</u> dii máj	Is the <u>book</u> good?
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> dii máj	Is <u>he</u> good?
<u>roonriian</u>	<u>roonriian</u> dii máj	Is the <u>school</u> good?
<u>khruu</u>	<u>khruu</u> dii máj	Is the <u>teacher</u> good?
<u>pàakkaa</u>	<u>pàakkaa</u> dii máj	Is the <u>pen</u> good?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>dinsǎo</u>	<u>dinsǎo</u> dii máj	Is the <u>pencil</u> good?
<u>kradaandam</u>	<u>kradaandam</u> dii máj	Is the <u>blackboard</u> good?
<u>naalikaa</u>	<u>naalikaa</u> dii máj	Is the <u>watch</u> good?
<u>kradaàat</u>	<u>kradaàat</u> dii máj	Is the <u>paper</u> good?
<u>aahǎan</u>	<u>aahǎan</u> dii máj	Is the <u>food</u> good?

### k) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	aakàat <u>dii</u>	The weather's good.
<u>nǎaw</u>	aakàat <u>nǎaw</u>	The weather's cold.
<u>phǒm</u>	<u>phǒm</u> nǎaw	I'm cold.
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> nǎaw	They're cold.
<u>sǔaj</u>	<u>kháw</u> <u>sǔaj</u>	They're pretty.
<u>rûup</u>	<u>rûup</u> sǔaj	The picture's pretty.
<u>pàakkaa</u>	<u>pàakkaa</u> sǔaj	The pen's pretty.
<u>dii</u>	<u>pàakkaa</u> <u>dii</u>	The pen's good.
<u>aahǎan</u>	<u>aahǎan</u> dii	The food's good.
<u>róon</u>	<u>aahǎan</u> <u>róon</u>	The food's hot.
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> róon	He's hot.
<u>dii</u>	<u>kháw</u> <u>dii</u>	He's good.

### l) Transformation Drill (Change statements into questions)

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Question</u>
roonriian dii	roonriian dii máj
rûup sǔaj	rûup sǔaj máj
wát sǔaj	wát sǔaj máj
aakàat nǎaw	aakàat nǎaw máj
aahǎan dii	aahǎan dii máj
khun róon	khun róon máj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

m) Transformation Drill (Change statements into the negative)

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Negative</u>
roonriian dii	roonriian mâj dii
aakàat năaw	aakàat mâj năaw
kháw róon	kháw mâj róon
aahăan dii	aahăan mâj dii
rûup sŭaj	rûup mâj sŭaj
khruu dii	khruu mâj dii

n) Transformation Drill (Change from Negative Statement to Negative Question:)

<u>Negative Statement</u>	<u>Negative Question</u>
1. roonriian mâj dii	roonriian mâj dii rŷy
2. aakàat mâj năaw	aakàat mâj năaw rŷy
3. kháw mâj róon	kháw mâj róon rŷy
4. rûup mâj sŭaj	rûup mâj sŭaj rŷy
5. khruu mâj dii	khruu mâj dii rŷy

o) Transformation Drill (Change the statements into questions)

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Questions</u>
kháw dii	kháw dii máj khráp
kháw mâj dii	kháw mâj dii rě khráp
kháw róon	kháw róon máj khráp
aahăan mâj róon	aahăan mâj róon rěkhráp
rûup mâj sŭaj	rûup mâj sŭaj rěkhráp
roonriian dii	roonriian dii máj khráp
khruu dii	khruu dii máj khráp
phěenthŭi mâj dii	phěenthŭi mâj dii rěkhráp
aahăan mâj dii	aahăan mâj dii rěkhráp
kháw sŭaj	kháw sŭaj máj khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

p) Response Drill

Students will indicate they are in agreement with the instructor's questions.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1) naalikaa dii rěkhráp	khráp (dii)
2) roonrian mâj dii rěkhráp	khráp (mâj dii)
3) khun năaw rěkhráp	khráp (năaw)
4) aahăan mâj dii rěkhráp	khráp (mâj dii)
5) rûup sŭaj rěkhráp	khráp (sŭaj)

q) Response Drill

Students will indicate they are in strong disagreement with the instructor's question.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1) naalikaa dii rěkhráp	plàaw khráp (mâj dii)
2) roonrian mâj dii rěkhráp	plàaw khráp (dii)
3) khun năaw rěkhráp	plàaw khráp (mâj năaw)
4) aahăan mâj dii rěkhráp	plàaw khráp (dii)
5) rûup sŭaj rěkhráp	plàaw khráp (mâj sŭaj)

r) Transformation Drill (Change the sentences into Noun Phrases - Noun + Modifier).

<u>Sentence</u>	BECOMES	<u>Noun Phrase</u>
nănsŷy dii 'The book(s) is/are good.'		nănsŷy dii dii '(some) good books'
1) phěenthfi dii		phěenthfi dii dii
2) aahăan dii		aahăan dii dii
3) pàakkaa dii		pàakkaa dii dii

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 4) roonrian dii | roonrian dii dii |
| 5) rûup sǔaj    | rûup sǔaj sǔaj   |
| 6) khruu dii    | khruu dii dii    |

### s) Expansion Drill

The instructor has the students give an expanded form of the noun; for example, pàakkaa becomes pàakkaa dii dii, etc.

#### Cue

#### Expanded Form

khun mii <u>pàakkaa</u> máj	khun mii <u>pàakkaa dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>dinsǔo</u> máj	khun mii <u>dinsǔo dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>khruu</u> máj	khun mii <u>khruu dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>roonrian</u> máj	khun mii <u>roonrian dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>phÿan</u> máj	khun mii <u>phÿan dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>rûup</u> máj	khun mii <u>rûup dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>nánsÿy</u> máj	khun mii <u>nánsÿy dii dii</u> máj

### t) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern (Request Form)

	pèet <u>pratuu</u> khráp	Open the door.
<u>nánsÿy</u>	pèet <u>nánsÿy</u> khráp	Open (your) book(s).
<u>faj</u>	pèet <u>faj</u> khráp	Turn on the lights.
<u>nâataaŋ</u>	pèet <u>nâataaŋ</u> khráp	Open the window.
<u>samùt</u>	pèet <u>samùt</u> khráp	Open (your) notebook.
<u>pratuu</u>	pèet <u>pratuu</u> khráp	Open the door.

Note to the instructor: Have the students perform some of the actions referred to above.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- u) Transformation Drill (Change the request forms into the negative.)

<u>Request Form</u>	<u>Negative Request Form</u>
pèet nâatàan khráp	<u>jàa</u> pèet nâatàan khráp
pìt faj khráp	<u>jàa</u> pìt faj khráp
duu nánsŷy khráp	<u>jàa</u> duu nánsŷy khráp
duu naalikaa khráp	<u>jàa</u> duu naalikaa khráp
pìt pratuu khráp	<u>jàa</u> pìt pratuu khráp

- v) Transformation Drill (Change the sentences below to others having similar meaning, egs. don't open: close.)

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
<u>jàa pèet</u> nánsŷy	<u>pìt</u> nánsŷy
<u>jàa pèet</u> pratuu	<u>pìt</u> pratuu
<u>pìt</u> faj	<u>jàa pèet</u> faj
<u>pìt</u> nâatàan	<u>jàa pèet</u> nâatàan

Drills t, u, and v may be repeated with karunaa 'kindly' or pròot 'please' before the affirmative and negative requestion forms. This will result in more polite forms.

- 1) jàa pìt pratuu becomes karunaa jàa pìt pratuu
- 2) pèet faj becomes pròot pèet faj

The forms with karunaa, can be made even more formal and polite by adding dâj maj khráp:

- 1) pìt pratuu becomes karunaa pìt pratuu (nòoj), dâj maj khráp 'Would you be so kind as to close the door'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### w) Response Drill

The instructor asks the question: khun phûut wâa araj khráp 'What did you say?' and gives the cue sentences. The student combines phǒm phûut wâa... 'I said' with the cue sentence.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
jàa pèet nâatàan	phǒm phûut wâa jáa pèet nâatàan
jàa duu nán̄sǎy	phǒm phûut wâa jáa duu nán̄sǎy
pít nán̄sǎy	phǒm phûut wâa pít nán̄sǎy
phûut taam khruu	phǒm phûut wâa phûut taam khruu (phûut taam 'repeat after')
phûut cháacháa nõoj	phǒm phûut wâa phûut cháa cháa nõoj
phǒm nǎaw	phǒm phûut wâa phǒm nǎaw

### 3.4 EXERCISES

- Find out from some of the other students or the instructor what the names of some of the objects in the classroom are.
- Ask some of the other students or the instructor about their possessions (i.e. what they have).
- Get an opinion (whether something is 'good' or 'beautiful') about some of the objects in the room.
- Tell another student that you are either cold, beautiful, or hot and find out if he (or she) is hot, beautiful, or cold.
- Ask another student to perform certain acts (close the door, etc.) for you. Use different kinds of request forms.
- Ask another student not to do certain things.

- g) The instructor asks a student if he has a (watch, etc.). If the student says he does have a (watch, etc.), the instructor says, 'This is your (watch, etc.), isn't it? (pointing at a watch). The student responds to the question.

### 3.5 VOCABULARY

aakàat	weather, air
aahǎan	food
burìi	cigarette
cháa	slow(ly)
dinsǒo	pencil
duu	to look at
faj (fáa)	electric light, electricity
kâwfi	chair
khâwcaj	to understand
khruu	teacher
kradaandam	blackboard
kradàat	paper
jàa	don't (negative request form)
mi	to have
naalikaa	watch, clock
nâatàan	window
nǎaw	(to be) cold
nân	that (one), there
nánsǎyphim	newspaper
nfi	this (one), here
nôn	that (one) over there, over there
nòoj	here <u>nòoj</u> is used to make the request less abrupt
ṅəən	money

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

pàakkaa	pen
pèet	to open, turn on (lights)
pìt	to close, turn off (lights)
phěnthîi	map
phûut	to say, speak
phûut taam	to repeat after
phÿan	friend
pratuu	door, gate
pròot	please (request form)
rîak wâa	to be called
roonriian	school
rónn	to be hot (temperature)
rûup	picture
samùt	notebook
sǎaj	(to be) pretty, beautiful
tó	table, desk
wát	temple, temple compound

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON FOUR

### 4.0 BASIC DIALOG: Establishing Identity and Ownership of Objects.

- A: chûaj sòn nán̄sŷy lêm nán  
hâj phôm nòɔj, dâj máj khráp      Could you hand me that  
book?
- B: dâj khráp      Yes.  
nán̄sŷy lêm níi dii      This book is good.  
khǎɔŋ khraj khráp      Whose is it?
- A: khǎɔŋ phŷan phôm khráp      A friend of mine.
- B: phŷan khun chŷy araj khráp      What's your friend's name?
- A: (kháw chŷy) cɔɔn khráp      His name's John.
- B: khon nǎj chŷy cɔɔn khráp      Which person is named John?
- A: khon nóon khráp      That person over there.
- B: léɛw nân khraj khráp      Then who's (that) there?
- A: phûujŷŷŷ rý phûuchaaj khráp      The woman or the man?
- B: phûuchaaj khráp      The man.
- A: nân nákrian khráp      That's a student.
- B: khun rúucàk kháw máj khráp      Do you know him?
- A: rúucàk khráp      Yes, I do.
- B: kháw pen khraj khráp      Who is he?
- A: kháw pen phŷan phôm khráp      He's my friend.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 4.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The following type of construction is used to indicate the number of items when referring to concrete nouns:

<u>Noun</u> + <u>Number</u> + <u>Unit Classifier</u> <sup>1</sup>			
<u>nânsÿy</u>	<u>sǒɔŋ</u>	<u>lêm</u>	'two books'
<u>nákrian</u>	<u>sǒɔŋ</u>	<u>khon</u>	'two students'
<u>kâwîi</u>	<u>sǒɔŋ</u>	<u>tua</u>	'two chairs'

When specifying a particular noun in a class, the following type of construction is used:

<u>Noun</u> + <u>Unit Classifier</u> + <u>Determiner</u>			
<u>phÿan</u>	<u>khon</u>	<u>nán</u>	'That friend'
<u>samùt</u>	<u>lêm</u>	<u>níi</u>	'This notebook'
<u>pàakkaa</u>	<u>dâam</u>	<u>nǎj</u>	'which pen?'

A unit classifier is one of a special class of nouns which are used in constructions to enumerate or specify concrete nouns. There are about 200 unit classifiers in Thai, and each of them is normally used with a large number of concrete nouns of very different meanings.

Since the unit classifier must be used in any situation in which you wish to indicate the number of items (of concrete nouns) or wish to specify a particular item out of a group (of concrete nouns), you will have to learn which unit classifier is used with each noun. Since there is usually no obvious connection between the classifier and its Noun, using the correct one will be a matter of having learned it.

There are a few classifiers for which noun reference is relatively predictable:

---

<sup>1</sup>For a full treatment of unit classifiers, see Noss, Richard B., Thai Reference Grammar, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1964, pp. 104, 105.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Unit Classifier</u>	<u>Noun Reference</u>
<u>khon</u>	People (professions and positions held by people)
<u>tua</u>	animals, objects with arms and legs
<u>phèen</u>	flat objects
<u>baj</u>	containers
<u>thên</u>	sticks

b) After a noun has been mentioned or otherwise identified, Classifier+Determiner or Number+Classifier can replace it in sentences following immediately:

- 1) A: nîi nánsýy 2 lêm  
x  
lêm năj khǒn khun  
x
'Here are 2 books.  
Which is yours?'
- B: lêm nán kháp
'That one'.
- 2) A: mii nánsýy máj  
x  
B: mii sǒn lêm kháp  
x
'Do you have any books?'  
'I have two.'

The classifier functions like a substitute word here, but it can not occur without either a number before it or a determiner after it.

c) khǒn 'of' or 'belonging to' is used to indicate 'possession'. It occurs after the thing possessed and before the possessor. Its occurrence in the Noun Phrase is optional when the head noun (thing possessed) is present, thus:

nánsýy khǒn kháw
'his book'

or nánsǎy kháw 'his book'

but the occurrence of khǎon is obligatory when the head noun is not present, thus:

khǎon kháw 'his'

The head noun can be omitted only after it has been identified since khǎon kháw acts as a replacement for the whole Noun Phrase.

- d) khraj like araj (see 2.2a) has the same position in the sentence as the noun it refers to, thus:

Question: kháw pen khraj (lit: he is who)  
Who is he?

Answer: kháw pen phân phǎm 'He's my friend.'

Question: khun cǎon pen khraj (lit: John is who)  
What is John?

Answer: khun cǎon pen khruu 'John's my teacher.'  
phǎm

When the main verb in the sentence is pen, khraj normally occurs in the predicate. Observe that it may be translated 'what' in some situations.

- e) The verb 'to be' is translated differently according to its subject and complement. Observe the following examples:

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>Complement</u>	
nǎi	(khyy)	phân kháw	'This is his friend.'
khun cǎon	pen	khruu phǎm	'John is my teacher.'
kháw	chǎy	cǎon	'He is (named) John.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 4.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

The instructor points at a student as he asks the question and gives the actual name of the student as the cue. He asks every student the question.

Questions: nân/nîi khraj khráp                      Who is that/this?  
Cue: (actual name of student  
pointed at)  
Answers: nîi/nân khun (Joe)                      This/that is (Joe).  
khráp

#### b) Response Drill

The instructor gives a cue and points at a student. One student asks and another answers questions like the following:

Instructor: khun thăawoon (pointing at a student)

Student 1: nân/nîi khun thăawoon,                      That/this is Mr.  
châj mâj khráp    Thaworn, isn't it?

Student 2: mâj châj khráp                                      No, it isn't.

Student 1: nân/nîi khraj khráp                              Who is that/this?

Student 2: (nân/nîi) khun \_\_\_\_                              (That/this is) \_\_\_\_

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. khun cim   | 4. khun coon    |
| 2. khruu      | 5. khruu kháw   |
| 3. khun mœrîi | 6. khun prasèet |

Repeat the drill using actual names of students in the class.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>nánsǎy</u> khraj khráp	Whose book (is it)?
naalikaa	<u>naalikaa</u> khraj khráp	Whose watch (is it)?
dinsǎo	<u>dinsǎo</u> khraj khráp	Whose pencil (is it)?
rûup	<u>rûup</u> khraj khráp	Whose picture (is it)?
kâwîi	<u>kâwîi</u> khraj khráp	Whose chair (is it)?
pàakkaa	<u>pàakkaa</u> khráj khráp	Whose pen (is it)?
nánsǎyphim	<u>nánsǎyphim</u> khraj khráp	Whose newspaper (is it)?
burîi	<u>burîi</u> khraj khráp	Whose cigarette (is it)?
nánsǎy	<u>nánsǎy</u> khraj khráp	Whose book (is it)?

### d) Response Drill

The instructor points at an object near a student and asks him whose is it. The student's response indicates the actual owner.)

MODEL: Instructor: nân/nîi nánsǎy khraj khráp

'Whose book is that/this?'

Student: khǎoŋ phǎm/khâw/khun cim

'Mine/his/Jim's'

- |             |               |           |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. dinsǎo   | 4. pàakkaa    | 7. nánsǎy |
| 2. naalikaa | 5. samùt      | 8. burîi  |
| 3. rûup     | 6. nánsǎyphim | 9. kâwîi  |

This drill may be repeated one time with students repeating the thing referred to in the answer: nánsǎy khǎoŋ phǎm and one time with students repeating the thing referred to and nân / nîi: nîi nánsǎy phǎm

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Expansion Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Expansion</u>	
1)	khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose?
náŋsǎy	náŋsǎy khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose book?
nân	nân náŋsǎy khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose book is that?
2)	khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose?
pàakkaa	pàakkaa khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose pen?
nân	nân pàakkaa khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose pen is that?
3)	khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose?
samùt	samùt khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose notebook?
nîi	nîi samùt khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose notebook is this?
4)	khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose?
dinsǎw	dinsǎw khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose pencil?
nân	nân dinsǎw khǎwŋ khraj khráp	Whose pencil is that?

### f) Reduction Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2)

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>	
náŋsǎy khǎwŋ khraj	náŋsǎy khraj	Whose book?
pàakkaa khǎwŋ khraj	pàakkaa khraj	Whose pen?
phŷan khǎwŋ phǎm	phŷan phǎm	My friend.
kâwîi khǎwŋ khraj	kâwîi khraj	Whose chair.
samùt khǎwŋ nákrían	samùt nákrían	Student's notebook.
phanrajaa khǎwŋ khun cǎwŋ	phanrajaa khun cǎwŋ	Johâ's wife.
khruu khǎwŋ raw	khruu raw	Our teacher.
saǎmii khǎwŋ kháw	saǎmii kháw	Her husband.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>	
khon nǎj chýy cɔɔn	khon nán khráp	Which person is named John? That one.
khon nǎj chýy cim	khon nóon khráp	Which person is named Jim? The one over there.
khon nǎj chýy mɛɛrɯi	khon nán khráp	Which person is named Mary? That one.
khon nǎj pen phýankhun	khon nóon khráp	Which person is your friend? The one over there.
khon nǎj pen khruu	khon nán khráp	Which person is the teacher? That one.
khon nǎj pen nákrían	khon nán khráp	Which person is a student? That one.

### h) Response Drill (The instructor asks the names of students.)

Instructor: khon nǎj chýy \_\_\_\_\_ Which person is named  
\_\_\_\_\_ (actual name) \_\_\_\_\_?

Student: khon níi/nán  
(pointing to the student): This/that person.

### i) Expansion Drill

1) nǎj	Which?
khon nǎj	Which one (person)?
nákrían khon nǎj	Which student?
nákrían phûuchaaaj khon nǎj	Which male student?
2) níi	This
khon níi	This one (person).
phûujǎn khon níi	This female.
nákrían phûujǎn khon níi	This female student.

- |    |                                    |                                   |
|----|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 3) | nóon                               | That over there.                  |
|    | khon nóon                          | That one over there.              |
|    | khruu khon nóon                    | That teacher over there.          |
|    | khruu kh๓๓๓ khun khon nóon         | That teacher of yours over there. |
| 4) | nán                                | That.                             |
|    | khon nán                           | That one (person).                |
|    | phŷan khon nán                     | That friend.                      |
|    | phŷan kh๓๓๓ khun khon nán          | That friend of yours.             |
|    | phŷan phŷuujŷn kh๓๓๓ khun khon nán | That female friend of yours.      |

j) Expansion Drill

- |    |  |  |
|----|--|--|
| 1) | khon nǎj chŷy c๓๓                        | Which person is named John?                  |
|    | nákrian                                  | Which student is named John?                 |
|    | phŷuuchaaj                               | Which male student is named John?            |
|    | nákrian khon nǎj chŷy c๓๓                |  |
|    | nákrian phŷuuchaaj khon nǎj chŷy c๓๓     |  |
| 2) | khon nán chŷy nonjaw                     | That person is named Nongyaw.                |
|    | phŷan ph๓๓                               | That friend of mine is named Nongyaw.        |
|    | phŷan ph๓๓ khon nán chŷy nonjaw          |  |
|    | phŷuujŷn                                 | That female friend of mine is named Nongyaw. |
|    | phŷan phŷuujŷn ph๓๓ khon nán chŷy nonjaw |  |
| 3) | nánŷy lêm nán dii                        | That book is good.                           |
|    | kh๓๓๓ khun                               | That book of yours is good.                  |
|    | nánŷy kh๓๓๓ khun lêm nán dii             |  |

4)	khon nán sǔaj	That one (person) is pretty.
phŷan	phŷan khon nán sǔaj	That friend is pretty.
khǒɔŋ khun	phŷan khǒɔŋ khun khon nán sǔaj	That friend of yours is pretty.
phŷujǐŋ	phŷan phŷujǐŋ khǒɔŋ khun khon nán sǔaj	That female friend of yours is pretty.

k) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

khon nǎj chŷy cim	khun cim, khon nǎj	Which one (person) is Jim?
khon nǎj chŷy praphâat	khun praphâat, khon nǎj	Which one is Prabas?
khon nǎj chŷy prasèet	khun prasèet, khon nǎj	Which one is Prasert?
khon nǎj chŷy nútchanan	khun nútchanan, khon nǎj	Which one is Nuchanan?
khon nǎj pen khruu khǒɔŋ khun	khruu khǒɔŋ khun, khon nǎj	Which is your teacher?
khon nǎj pen phanrajaa khun thǎawɔɔn	phanrajaa khun thǎawɔɔn, khon nǎj	Which one is Thaworn's wife?
khon nǎj pen sǎamii khun mɛɛrŋi	sǎamii khun mɛɛrŋi, khon nǎj	Which one is Mary's husband?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>	
phûujǎn rý phûuchaaj	phûuchaaj khráp	Woman or man? Man.
chýy cœn rý cim	cim khráp	Is (he) named John or Jim? Jim
khon nán rý khon nóon	khon nóon khráp	That one or the one over there? The one over there.
kháw pen khruu rý nákrían	nákrían khráp	Is he teacher or a student? A student.
dii rý mâj dii	dii khráp	(Is it) good or not? (It's) good.
sǔaj rý mâj sǔaj	mâj sǔaj khráp	(Is she) pretty or not? (She is) not (pretty).
khǒœn khun rý khǒœn kháw	khǒœn kháw khráp	Yours or his? His.

- m) Response Drill (Pairs of students engage in an exchange of the following kind using actual names of other students).

Student 1: kháw chýy \_\_\_\_\_ (actual name)

Student 2: khraj khráp, khon níi rý  
khon nán (pointing at students)

Student 1: khon níi/nán khráp

n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
cim	chây cǎon rý cim	(chây) cim khráp
nóon	khon nán rý khon nóon	khon nóon khráp
khruu	pen phyan rý pen khruu	(pen) khruu khráp
khun	khǎon khun rý khǎon phǎm	khǎon khun khráp
sǎaj	phûujǎn khon nán sǎaj rý mâj sǎaj	sǎaj khráp
mâj	chây níi dii rý mâj dii	mâj dii khráp

o) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>		
chây cim	kháw pen khraj	kháw chây cim
pen phyan phǎm	kháw pen khraj	kháw pen phyan phǎm
chây cim, pen phyan phǎm	khon nán pen khraj	kháw chây cim, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon
chây mǎerfi, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon	kháw pen khraj	kháw chây mǎerfi, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon
chây praphâat	kháw pen khraj	kháw chây praphâat
pen khruu phǎm	kháw pen khraj	kháw pen khruu phǎm
chây praphâat, pen khruu phǎm	kháw pen khraj	kháw chây praphâat pen khruu phǎm
chây khun chótchǎoj	khon nán pen khraj	kháw chây chótchǎoj
pen khruu	khon nóon pen khraj	kháw pen khruu
chây cǎon, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon	khon níi pen khraj	kháw chây cǎon, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

The instructor points at two or more of the objects as he asks the question and selects one of them as he gives the response.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>	
1) nánsŷy lêm năj dii	lêm nán	Which book is good? That one.
2) pàakkaa dâam năj dii	dâam níi	Which pen is good? This one.
3) dinsŏo thêŋ năj dii	thêŋ níi	Which pencil is good? This one.
4) kâwîi tua năj dii	tua nán	Which chair is good? That one.
5) phěnthîi phèen năj dii	phèen níi	Which map is good? This one.

q) Response Drill (Selecting two each of the objects listed below, the instructor asks questions about ownership using the following model):

Instructor: níi nánsŷy sŏoŋ lêm, Here are 2 books.  
lêm năj khŏoŋ khun Which (one) is yours?

Student: lêm níi/nán This one/that one.

- |          |            |             |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1) kâwîi | 3) dinsŏo  | 5) naalikaa |
| 2) samùt | 4) pàakkaa |             |

In the question khun may be replaced by kháw or phŏm / dichán.

r) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	<u>nánsǎy lêm ní dii</u>
samùt	<u>samùt lêm ní dii</u>
pàakkaa	<u>pàakkaa dâam ní dii</u>
dinsǎo	<u>dinsǎo thên ní dii</u>
tó (tua)	<u>tó tua ní dii</u>
phěnthîi	<u>phěnthîi phèen ní dii</u>
rûup (baj)	<u>rûup baj ní dii</u>
nákrian	<u>nákrian khon ní dii</u>
khruu	<u>khruu khon ní dii</u>
naalikaa	<u>naalikaa ryan ní dii</u>
nánsǎy	<u>nánsǎy lêm ní dii</u>

s) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	chûaj sòn <u>nánsǎy lêm nán</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp
pàakkaa, nóon	chûaj sòn <u>pàakkaa dâam nóon</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp
rûup, nán	chûaj sòn <u>rûup baj nán</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp
phěnthîi, nán	chûaj sòn <u>phěnthîi phèen nán</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp
nánsǎy, nóon	chûaj sòn <u>nánsǎy lêm nóon</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp

dins๓๐, nán      chûaj sòŋ dins๓๐ thêŋ nán hâj phǒm  
nòoj, dâj máj khráp

naalikaa, nán      chûaj sòŋ naalikaa ryan nán hâj phǒm  
nòoj, dâj máj khráp

#### 4.3 EXERCISE

- a) One student points at an object and asks who it belongs to. Another student (the actual owner) says that it's his. Continue until ownership has been established for all the objects the students are familiar with.
- b) Find out the names of all the students by asking questions like this: What's the name of that person? A student will respond with the real name.
- c) Find out the names of all the students by asking questions like this: Who is named \_\_\_\_\_? (using the names of students). The student with the name will respond: I am (named) \_\_\_\_\_.
- d) One student will point to an object and will ask another student if it's his. He will respond that it is.
- e) Find out if other students think various objects in the room are good or beautiful.
- f) Ask someone to pass you something. He pretends he isn't sure which one you want and asks, 'This one or that one!'. You indicate which one and he passes it. You thank him.

4.4 VOCABULARY

ba.j	classifier for 'picture', etc.
cim	Jim (name)
chótchóoj	Chotchoi (Thai female first name)
chûaj	please
dâam	classifier for 'pen', etc.
dâ.j	can, could, be able
hâ.j	for (the benefit of)
khon (khon) <sup>1</sup>	people, also classifier for humans
khǒŋ	of, belonging to
khraj	who, what (in some constructions)
lêm	classifier for 'book'
nonjaw	Nongyaw (Thai female first name)
nákrian (khon)	student, pupil
nán, nân	that (determiner)
nǎ.j	which (one(s)) (determiner)
níi, nîi	this (determiner)
nútchanan	Nuchanan (female first name)
nóon, nôon	the one over there (determiner)
pen	to be
phanrajaa, pharijaa, wife (elegant term)	
phanjaa (khon)	
phèn	classifier for 'map, picture, paper' sheet-like
phûuchaa.j (khon)	man, boy (male human of any age)
phûujǎ.j (khon)	woman, girl (female human of any age)

---

<sup>1</sup>The unit classifier for each noun is given after the noun.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

prasə̀ət	Prasert (male first name)
raw	we, our, us
rúucàk	to know, to be acquainted with, to be familiar with
rŷy, rý, etc.	or
ryan	classifier for 'watch, clock'
săamii (khon)	husband (elegant term)
sòŋ	to pass, to hand (someone something)
sŏŋ	two
tua	classifier for 'animals, objects with legs (chairs, tables, etc.)'
thêŋ	classifier for 'pencil', etc.

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON FIVE

### 5.0 BASIC DIALOG: Social Formulae

A:	sawàtdii khráp, khun prichaa	Hello, Pricha.
B:	sawàtdii khráp, khun sǒmsàk pen jaṅṅaj bâaṅ khráp	Hello, Somsak. How are you?
A:	kô rŷaj rŷaj khráp	O.K. (so, so)
B:	โฉ, khun prichaa khráp nŷi khun cǒon, nân khun mserŷi, phanrajaa khun cǒon	Oh, Prichaa This is John. That's Mary. John's wife.
A:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
John:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
Mary:	sawàtdii khâ	Hello.
(10 minutes later)		
A:	khǒothôot, phǒm paj kòon na khráp	Excuse me, I must go.
B:	cheen khráp, phóp kan màj khráp	All right, I'll see you again.

### 5.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) The particular form used by one Thai when greeting another is dependent on the social status and age of the two participants. Within this framework three groups can be distinguished: (1) Equals, (2) Superiors, and (3) Inferiors. Equals are persons of the same status and greater age. Inferiors are persons of lower status, or of equal status and lesser age. Within these social groups there are formal and informal types of discourse.

Observe the following examples:

1. GREETINGS

a) Between Equals

i) Formal

A: sawàtdii khráp

B: sawàtdii khráp

(The exchange may continue as in 1.0)

ii) Informal (especially between intimates)

A: (sa) wàt dii khráp

B: (sa) wàt dii khráp

or A: pen (jaŋ) ɲaj bâaŋ khráp      How are you?

B: kô rŷaj rŷaj      So so.

or B: jêε      Terrible.

or A: paj năj khráp      Where are you going?

B: paj { thŷaw khráp      Out for pleasure.

{ thurá      Out for business.

or A: paj năj maa khráp      Where are you coming from?

B: paj { thŷaw maa khráp      From pleasure.

{ thurá      From business.

b) Inferior or Superior

i) Formal

Inferior: sawàtdii khráp (accompanied by a wai (wâj). See 1.1)

Superior: (sawàtdii) (sometimes only wais in return.)

NOTE: The height of the hands when waiing is in inverse ratio to the age and social position of the participants.

or Inferior: thâan sabaajdii ǎ khráp

Superior: sabaajdii, khòopcaj

ii) There is no informal greeting from inferior to superior.

c) Superior to Inferior

i) Informal

Superior: pen (jaŋ) ɲaj bâan

Inferior: sabaajdii khráp

ii) There is no formal greeting from superior to inferior.

NOTE: A greeting between superior and inferior may be no more than an exchange of wais with the inferior waiing first.

2 INTRODUCTIONS

a) Between Equals

A: khun sǎmsàk khráp  
nîi khun prichaa

sǎmsàk: sawàtdii khráp

prichaa: sawàtdii khráp

b) Between Inferiors and Superiors

(An inferior is always introduced to a superior)

A: khun (name of inferior) khráp  
nfi thân \_\_\_\_\_ (rank, position)  
khun \_\_\_\_\_ (name)

Inferior: sawàtdii khráp (accompanied by a wai)

NOTE: jindii thfi dâj rúucàk 'glad to know (you)' is added after sawàtdii in many social groups. Among equals a woman is introduced to a man. The woman usually wais before the greeting. If one woman is introduced to another, the wai is not necessary but is considered as polite.

3. LEAVETAKING (at all levels)

A: khǒothôot, phǒm paj kòn      'Excuse me, I  
na khráp                              must go.'

B: chǎen khráp, phóp kan      'All right, I'll  
màj khráp                              see you again.'

4. INVITATION

chǎen khráp is used as an invitation to a person.

- a) to take some action which is beneficial to himself (eat food, come in, sit down, etc.)
- or b) to do something the person has already indicated he wants to do (take leave, etc.).

Special Note to the Student:

- a) Social status and age are very important in Thailand. Most Thais are very conscious of the social status and age of the people they meet, and act accordingly. The American who has been assigned to work in Thailand may

not be aware of his social position. Depending on his age and the position he holds in the government agency his status will vary from high to very high; consequently, he should use the forms designated as 'between equals' for most of the Thais he meets in his work and reserve the 'inferior to superior' forms for greeting higher ranking officials. With taxi drivers and servants he might choose to use the 'superior to interior' forms. If he should meet the King of Thailand or a Buddhist priest, none of the forms given would be correct.

b) The following are some common titles and forms of address:

- 1) thân It replaces khun when speaking to a superior.  
thân + Title (position): thân thûut 'Mr. Ambassador'
- 2) mǎo: (khun) + mǎo + Name 'Doctor X' (M.D.)
- 3) dóktêe: dóktêe + Name 'Doctor Y' (Ph.D.)
- 4) aacaan: aacaan + Name 'Mr./Mrs.' (College teacher)
- 5) khruu: khruu + Name 'Mr./Mrs.' (teacher)

## 5.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) There are several ways to indicate negation in Thai.<sup>1</sup> The choice of ways is determined by (1) the form class (noun, verb, etc.) of the thing to be negated and (2) the kind of negative meaning to be expressed.

1. mâj 'not, the contrary, etc.' is used to negate all types of verbs (stative, modals, motion, etc.)

aakaat mâj rǎon 'The weather isn't hot.'

phǒm mâj mi naalikaa 'I don't have a watch.'

2. mâj dâj 'not, not as assumed to be' is used to negate verbs of motion, action verbs, and pen and chÿy. It is used often in past situations and in present situations that are contrary to expectations.

---

<sup>1</sup>See Noss, 138-143 for a fuller treatment.

phǒm mâj dâj pít faj 'I didn't turn off the lights.'  
 kháw mâj dâj chýy sǒmsàk 'He's not named Somsak.'

3. mâj châj 'not a case of' is used most frequently to negate Noun Phrases as complements in Equational sentences (sentences without verbs).

nîi mâj châj dinsǒo kháw 'This isn't his pencil'.  
 naalikaa ryan níi mâj châj 'This watch isn't yours.'  
khǒon khun.

In sentences with pen as the connective verb (kháw pen nákrían, etc.) either of two types of negation may occur according to the situation.

As an initial statement:

kháw mâj dâj pen nákrían 'He isn't a student.'

As a response to a question:

kháw pen khruu (kháw) mâj châj nákrían 'He's the teacher. He isn't a student.'

- b) pen janṇaj 'How is/are...?' can be used with subject like aakaat, etc.

aakaat pen janṇaj 'How's the weather?'

(kaan) rián phaasǎa thaj pen janṇaj 'How is studying Thai?'

### 5.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

Have pairs of students practice the following exchange (with accompanying wai when appropriate):

1. A: pen (jan) ṇaj bâṇ khráp  
 B: { kô rýaj rýaj  
       { jêe

2. A: paj nǎj khráp  
B: paj { thfaw khráp  
          { thurá
3. A: paj nǎj maa khráp  
B: paj { thfaw maa khráp  
          { thurá

b. Response Drill

Have sets of 3 students participate in the following exchanges (with wai when appropriate):

1. A: khun (name of student)  
nfi khun (name of student)

Student 1: sawàtdii khráp

Student 2: sawàtdii khráp

2. A: khun (name of a student)  
nfi khun (name of student)

Student 1: sawàtdii khráp

jindii thfi dâj rúucàk (khun)

Student 2: sawàtdii khráp

jindii thfi dâj rúucàk (khun)

3. Have one student take the part of Foreign Minister, Thanat Khoman.

A: khun (name of student)  
 nîi khun thanàt khooman<sup>1</sup>

Student: sawàtdii khráp

c) Response Drill

Have pairs of students practice the following exchange:

A: khǒothôot, phǒm paj kòon nakhráp  
 B: chæen khráp, phóp kan màj khráp

d) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
prasèet	kháw chýy prichaa	kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>prasèet</u>
cɔon	kháw chýy cim	kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>cɔon</u>
praphâat	kháw chýy wíchaj	kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>praphâat</u>
kaandaa	kháw chýy waanii	kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>kaandaa</u>

---

<sup>1</sup>nîi thân rátthamontrií krasuan  
 tàan prathêet

'Mr. Foreign Minister',,

or nîi thân rátthamontrií krasuan  
 tàan prathêet, khun thanàt  
 khooman

'Mr. Foreign Minister,  
 Mr. Thanat Khoman'  
 might be used.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
kháw	khun malíkaa pen khruu phǒm	khun malíkaa mǎj dâj pen khruu <u>kháw</u>
khun	khun nonlák pen phýan kháw	<u>khun</u> nonlák mǎj dâj pen phýan <u>khun</u>
khun coon	mærfi pen phanrajaa khun cim	mærfi mǎj dâj pen phanrajaa <u>khun</u> <u>coon</u>

### f) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
nâataaŋ	nân pratuu	nân mǎj châj <u>nâataaŋ</u>
dinsǒo	nîi pàakkaa	nîi mǎj châj <u>dinsǒo</u>
wát	nôn roonrian	nôn mǎj châj <u>wát</u>
tó	nân kâwîi	nân mǎj châj <u>tó</u>
samùt	nîi náŋsýy	nîi mǎj châj <u>samùt</u>
rûup wát	nân rûup roonrian	nân mǎj châj <u>rûup wát</u>

NOTE: Point at the objects referred to in this drill.

## 5.4 EXERCISES

a) Have the students discuss various objects in the room in terms of:

1. What they are and what they are not,
2. What they are called,
3. Which ones are good, or beautiful.
4. Who has them, and
5. Who they belong to.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) Have the students discuss various people in the classroom in terms of:
1. Their names,
  2. Whether they are teachers, wives, or friends, and if so, of whom,
  3. Whether they (the students) are good, pretty, hot, or cold,
  4. Whether they are feeling well, terrible, or so so,
  5. Whether one particular student is acquainted with another particular one,
  6. If anyone in the room is named sōmcit, ubon, reenuu, or malíkāa, and
  7. If there is anything else interesting about the people in the room (including the instructor) that the students know how to ask about.
- c) Using students act out the following social situations:
1. Greetings
    - a) A student Mr. Brown greets a Thai friend of his from the Foreign Ministry, Mr. Praphaat.
    - b) A Thai Minister, Mr. Arun, is greeted by one of the people in his ministry.
    - c) A servant greets his boss, Mr. Jones.
    - d) Two Thai women friend, Mrs. Aarii and Mrs. Amphoon, meet and greet each other.
    - e) Two Thai men, Mr. Somchit and Mr. Pridaa, greet each other. One says he feels terrible.
  2. Introductions
    - a) A friend introduces two men (Mr. Prasæt and Mr. Somsak) who work in the same office.
    - b) Someone introduces a lady, Mrs. Wilaj to Mr. Prasit, a high ranking officer in the Ministry of Interior.
    - c) Mrs. Nonglak is introduced to Mr. Wichaj. Both are teachers in the same school.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 3. Leavetaking

One student says he wants to leave; another agrees.

### 4. Invitations

- a) One student knocks at the door; another invites him to come in.
- b) A lady and a gentleman are standing at the open door of the elevator. He invites her to get on.
- c) You have invited a friend to dinner. After you have sat down, you invite him to eat.

## 5.5 VOCABULARY

aacaan (khon)	college or university teacher
aarii	Aree (male or female first name)
amphoon	Amphorn (male or female first name)
ôo	Oh!
ubon	Ubon (female first name)
bâaŋ	some, any (pronominal)
chæen	please, go ahead and...
dóktêe (khon)	doctor (Ph.D.)
jaŋraj, jaŋŋaj, ɲaj	how (question word)
jindii	(to be) glad
jêe	(to be) terrible, to be in a bad way
kan	together (particle indicating mutuality or reciprocity)
kaandaa	Kanda (female first name)
kô	connective particle; not to be translated in <u>kô rŷaj rŷaj</u> .
kòon	before, first
krasuaŋ (krasuaŋ)	ministry (division of the government)
khòopcaj	thank you (superior to inferior)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

maa	to come
maalíkaa	Malika (female first name)
màj	again, new
mâj dâj	not, not as assumed to be
m໋ອ (khon)	medical doctor
nonlák	Nonglak (female first name)
ņaj	variant form of <u>janraj</u>
paj	to go
paj... maa	to come from
paj k໋ອn	to go first, to go ahead
prathêet (prathêet)	country, nation
phóp	to meet, run into (someone)
phóp... kan	to meet or see each other
rátthamontrii	minister (head of a ministry)
reenuu	Renu (male or female first name)
rŷaj rŷaj	so so (as a response to a greeting)
s໋mcít	Somchit (male or female first name)
s໋msàk	Somsak (male first name)
tàaņ	(to be) different, separate
tàaņ prathêet	foreign
thanàt khooman	Mr. Thanat Khoman, Foreign Minister of Thailand
thân	you; he, she (for persons of superior status)
thîi	that, which (connective)
thurá	business, affairs, errands
paj thurá	to go out on business
thîaw	for pleasure
paj thîaw	to go out for pleasure
waanii	Wanee (female first name)
wíchaj	Wichai (male first name)



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. kháw lèn dontrii mâj kèn 'He plays (music) poorly.'
3. khruu kháw kèn phaasăa juan 'His teacher is good in Vietnamese.'
- c) The verbs rian 'study, learn', khĭan 'write', àan 'read', and sŏn 'to teach' do not occur without object complements; if there is no other complement, nánsŷy is used, thus rian nánsŷy 'to study (in a school)', khĭan nánsŷy 'to write (books)', àan nánsŷy 'to read', and sŏn nánsŷy 'to teach'.
- d) The Thais use the following terms to refer to people of various nationalities:
- For all nationalities: khon + Name of Country
    - khon thaj 'a Thai'
    - khon jĭipùn 'a Japanese'
    - khon phaamăa 'a Burmese'
    - khon jæraman 'a German'
    - khon iijĭp 'an Egyptian' etc.
  - For people from Malaya, Indonesia, India, and the Middle East only: khèek + Name of Country.
    - khèek malajuu 'a Malayan'
    - khèek iijĭp 'an Egyptian'
    - khèek india 'an Indian', etc.
  - The terms khèek and faràn are used alone to refer to certain large groups of people.
    - faràn refers to white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, and white Americans.

Q: kháw pen faràn, 'He's a 'farang',  
châj máj 'isn't he?'

A: châj khráp, kháw 'That's right. He's  
pen khon sapeen 'Spanish.'

- b) khèək refers to people from Malaya, Indonesia, India, Ceylon, and the Middle East. (Normally dark-skinned people).

kháw pen khèək, maa càak 'He's a khèək.' 'He  
prathêet india comes from India.'

4. The Moslem people living in South Thailand are referred to as thaj ìtsalaam 'Thai Moslem'.

- e) myaŋ + (name of city) or name of city alone is used in colloquial language to refer to cities, thus myaŋ wəschintân (or) wəschintân 'Washington'. In the mass media kruŋ + (name of city) is used to refer to some capitol cities, thus kruŋ room 'Rome', kruŋ parít 'Paris', etc.

- f) myaŋ + (name of country) or name of country alone is frequently used in spoken Thai to refer to a country instead of prathêet + (name of country) which is more formal and is used in newspapers, speeches, etc.

kháw maa càak jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

kháw maa càak myaŋ jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

kháw maa càak prathêet jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

- g) As was indicated in 4.1, khraj usually occurs in the complement position after pen (kháw pen khraj, etc.); in some situations khraj precedes pen. Observe the following two examples:

1. 'Juliet' pen khraj 'Who's Juliet?' (I never heard of her.)

2. khraj pen 'Juliet' 'Who's Juliet?' (Who is playing the part of Juliet in the play by Shakespeare.)

When the main verb in the sentence is khyy 'to be', if the subject of the sentence is a pronoun, khraj is in the complement position.

kháw khyy khraj

'Who is he?'

With noun subjects khraj may precede or follow khyy optionally:

khun nonnúť khyy khraj

'Who is Nongnut?'

or khraj khyy khun nonnúť

With verbs besides pen and khyy, khraj may occupy the subject or complement position:

khraj sǒn phaasǎa thaj

'Who teaches Thai?'

khun praphâat sǒn

'Who is Prapas teaching

phaasǎa thaj hâj khraj

Thai to?'

## 6.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                                     |                     |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <u>kháw pen (khon) thaj</u>      | He's a Thai.        |
| 2. <u>kháw pen (khon) ameerikan</u> | He's an American.   |
| 3. <u>kháw pen (khon) ankrít</u>    | He's an Englishman. |
| 4. <u>kháw pen (khon) farànsèet</u> | He's a Frenchman.   |
| 5. <u>kháw pen (khon) jæraman</u>   | He's a German.      |
| 6. <u>kháw pen (khon) ciin</u>      | He's a Chinese.     |
| 7. <u>kháw pen (khon) jîipùn</u>    | He's a Japanese.    |
| 8. <u>kháw pen (khon) laaw</u>      | He's a Lao.         |
| 9. <u>kháw pen (khon) juan</u>      | He's a Vietnamese.  |
| 10. <u>kháw pen (khon) phamáa</u>   | He's a Burmese.     |
| 11. <u>kháw pen (khon) khamǎen</u>  | He's a Cambodian.   |
| 12. <u>kháw pen (khon) kawlii</u>   | He's a Korean.      |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	<u>kháw</u> pen khon thaj
khun	<u>khun</u> pen khon thaj
khon ankrít	khun pen <u>khon ankrít</u>
khon ameerikan	khun pen <u>khon ameerikan</u>
kháw	<u>kháw</u> pen khon ameerikan
khun coon	<u>khun coon</u> pen khon ameerikan
phÿan phǒm	<u>phÿan phǒm</u> pen khon ameerikan
khon ciin	phÿan phǒm pen <u>khon ciin</u>
kháw	<u>kháw</u> pen khon ciin
khon phamâa	kháw pen <u>khon phamâa</u>
khun	<u>khun</u> pen khon phamâa
thaj	khun pen khon <u>thaj</u>

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen khon thaj He's a Thai.
2. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen juan He's a Vietnamese.
3. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen khon ameerikan He's American.
4. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen khon phamâa He's Burmese.
5. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen ciin He's Chinese.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

d) Transformation Drill (Change to the negative in two ways.)

<u>Affirmative Pattern</u>	<u>Negative 1-Pattern</u>	<u>Negative 2-Pattern</u>
kháw pen khon jîipùn	kháw mâj châj khon jîipùn	kháw mâj dâj pen khon jîipùn
kháw pen laaw	kháw mâj châj laaw	kháw mâj dâj pen laaw
kháw pen khon aṅkrít	kháw mâj châj khon aṅkrít	kháw mâj dâj pen khon aṅkrít
kháw pen juan	kháw mâj châj juan	kháw mâj dâj pen juan

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
ciin	kháw pen khon thaj, châj máj	mâj châj kháw pen khon ciin mâj châj khon thaj
	He's Thai, isn't he?	No, he isn't. He's Chinese. He isn't Thai.
laaw	kháw pen khon thaj, châj máj	mâj châj, kháw pen khon laaw mâj châj khon thaj
	He's Thai, isn't he?	No, he isn't. He's Lao. He isn't Thai.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

laaw	knun pen khon thaj rýplàaw	plàaw (or) phǒm pen khon laaw mâj châj khon thaj
	Are you Thai?	No, I'm <u>not</u> . / I'm not. I'm Lao. I'm not a Thai.
phonlaryan	khun pen thahǎan lǎ	{ plàaw mâj châj phǒm pen phonlaryan mâj châj thahǎan
	You're a soldier?	No, I am <u>not</u> . No, I'm <u>not</u> . I'm a civilian. I'm not a soldier.
câwnâathîi sathǎanthûut	khun pen câwnâathîi juusít lǎ	{ mâj châj plàaw phǒm pen câwnâathîi sathǎanthûut mâj châj câwnâathîi juusít
	You are a USIS official?	No, I'm not. No, I am not. I'm an Embassy official. I'm not a USIS official.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khon tàaŋ caŋwàt	khun pen khon kruŋthêep châj máj	{mâj châj {plàaw phǒm pen khon tàaŋ caŋwàt mâj châj khon kruŋthêep
	You are a Bangkokker, aren't you?	No, I'm not. No, I am not. I'm an out-of-towner. I'm not a Bangkokker.
phÿan	kháw pen phanrajaa khun cǎon lǎ	mâj châj kháw pen phÿan mâj châj phanrajaa
	She's John's wife?	No, she isn't. She's a friend. She's not his wife.

### f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>thaj</u>	He's from Thailand.
ameerikaa	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>ameerikaa</u>	He's from America.
farànsèet	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>farànsèet</u>	He's from France.
wîatnaam	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>wîatnaam</u>	He's from Vietnam.

phamâa	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>phamâa</u>	He's from Burma.
rátsia	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>rátsia</u>	He's from Russia.
ciin	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>ciin</u>	He's from China.
khaměen	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>khaměen</u>	He's from Cambodia.
malajuu	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>malajuu</u>	He's from Malaya.
filíppin	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>filíppin</u>	He's from the Philippines.

g) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

kháw pen khon thaj  
kháw pen khon aṅkrìt  
kháw pen juan  
kháw pen khon rátsia  
kháw pen jîipùn  
kháw pen khèsk india

Pattern 2

kháw maa càak (prathêet) thaj  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) aṅkrìt  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) wîatnaam  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) rátsia  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) jîipùn  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) india

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Substitution Drill

Have two students do the following exchange substituting the cue words for those underlined.

Student 1: kháw pen juan, châj máj khráp

Student 2: máj châj, pen khon thaj khráp

Student 1: maa càak prathêet thaj rý khráp

Student 2: khráp

1. jæraman, farànsèet

4. rátsia, sapeen

2. laaw, kawlyi

5. ankrít, ameerika(a)(n)

3. jîipùn, ciin

### i) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
krunthêep	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak <u>krun room</u> Bangkok.
woochiŋtân	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak <u>woochiŋtân</u> Washington.
njuu jóok	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak <u>njuu jóok</u> New York.
krun room	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak <u>krun room</u> Rome.
krun loondon	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak <u>krun loondon</u> London.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

lɔɔndɔn	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak <u>lɔɔndɔn</u>  London.
denwêe	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak <u>denwêe</u>  Denver.
saan fransisko	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak <u>saan</u> <u>fransisko</u>  San Francisco.

### j) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
ankrít, ameerikaa	kháw maa càak <u>ankrít</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak <u>ameerikaa</u>
lɔɔndɔn, njuu jóok	kháw maa càak <u>lɔɔndɔn</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak <u>njuu jóok</u>
parít, tookiaw	kháw maa càak (kruŋ) <u>parít</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak (kruŋ) <u>tookiaw</u>
wɔɔchɪŋtân, denwêe	kháw maa càak <u>wɔɔchɪŋtân</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak <u>denwêe</u>
farànsèet, jæraman	kháw maa càak <u>farànsèet</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak <u>jæraman</u>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak<br>parîit                | He's a 'farang'.<br>He comes from Paris.      |
| 2. kháw pen khèek, maa càak<br>malajuu               | He's a 'khèek'.<br>He comes from Malaya.      |
| 3. kháw pen khon thaj, maa càak<br>myaŋ thaj         | He's a Thai.<br>He comes from Thailand.       |
| 4. kháw pen khèek, maa càak<br>prathêet india        | He's a 'khèek'.<br>He comes from India.       |
| 5. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak<br>prathêet aŋkrît       | He's 'farang'.<br>He comes from England.      |
| 6. kháw pen khon ciin, maa càak<br>hôngkon           | He's Chinese.<br>He comes from Hong Kong.     |
| 7. kháw pen khon thaj ìtsalaam,<br>maa càak pàttanii | He's a Thai Moslem.<br>He comes from Pattani. |
| 8. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak<br>woochiŋtân            | He's a 'farang'.<br>He comes from Washington. |

### l) Substitution Drill

Substitute the cue words in one of the exchanges below  
(only one will fit the cue word):

MODEL I: (for khèek)            Cue word: khon malajuu

A: phÿan khun pen faràŋ, châj máj

B: mâj châj, pen khèek

A: maa càak prathêet năj

B: maa càak (prathêet) malajuu

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

MODEL II: (for others) Cue word: khon farànsèet (or) thaj

A: phÿan khun pen faràn, châj máj

B: châj khráp, pen khon farànsèet  
mâj châj khráp, pen khon thaj

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. jÿipùn     | 6. khaměen |
| 2. india      | 7. sapeen  |
| 3. rátsia     | 8. malajuu |
| 4. ameerikan  | 9. phamáa  |
| 5. indoonisia | 10. laaw   |

### m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. khonthaj phûut phaasăa thaj            | Thais speak Thai.            |
| 2. khon ameerikan phûut phaasăa ankrít    | Americans speak English.     |
| 3. khon ankrít phûut phaasăa ankrít       | Englishmen speak English.    |
| 4. khon ciin phûut phaasăa ciin           | Chinese speak Chinese.       |
| 5. khon laaw phûut phaasăa laaw           | Lao speak Laotian.           |
| 6. khèek malajuu phûut phaasăa malajuu    | Malayans speak Malay.        |
| 7. khon juan phûut phaasăa juan.          | Vietnamese speak Vietnamese. |
| 8. khon óosatreeelia phûut phaasăa ankrít | Australians speak English.   |

### n) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
rátsia	khon rátsia phûut phaasăa <u>rátsia</u>
kawlĭi	khon kawllĭi phûut phaasăa <u>kawlĭi</u>
jÿipùn	khon jÿipùn phûut phaasăa <u>jÿipùn</u>
khaměen	khon khaměen phûut phaasăa <u>khaměen</u>
phamáa	khon phamáa phûut phaasăa <u>phamáa</u>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Substitution Drill

Have two students engage in the following exchange, substituting the cue words below for those underlined:

Cue: phamâa, ciin

Student 1: thfi phamâa, khâw phûut phaasăa ciin, châj máj

Student 2: mâj châj, khâw phûut phaasăa phamâa  
khâw mâj dâj phûut phaasăa ciin.

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. farànsèet, jøeraman  | 7. hõnkoŋ, wíatnaam      |
| 2. indooniisia, jfiipùn | 8. thaj, malajuu         |
| 3. sapeen, italfan      | 9. njuu jóok, kawlyi     |
| 4. myan̄thaj, thaj      | 10. rát míchíkseen, thaj |
| 5. ameerikaa, aŋkrít    | 11. bóssatân, rátsia     |
| 6. khamëen, laaw        | 12. rát indianâa, aŋkrít |

### p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
thaj	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>thaj</u> dâj	He can speak Thai.
laaw	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>laaw</u> dâj	He can speak Lao.
jøeraman	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>jøeraman</u> dâj	He can speak German.
sapeen	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>sapeen</u> dâj	He can speak Spanish.
rátsia	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>rátsia</u> dâj	He can speak Russian.
ciin	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>ciin</u> dâj	He can speak Chinese.
juan	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>juan</u> dâj	He can speak Vietnamese.
malajuu	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>malajuu</u> dâj	He can speak Malayan.
phamâa	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>phamâa</u> dâj	He can speak Burmese.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### q) Substitution Drill

Ask the students what languages they can speak, using the following patterns:

Instructor: khun phûut phaasăa ( \_\_\_\_\_ ) dâj máj khráp  
 Can you speak \_\_\_\_\_?

Student: dâj khráp                      Yes, I can.  
 mâj dâj khráp                      No, I can't.

### r) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	nákrian khon ní kèn phaasăa thaj máj	Is that student good in Thai?
khun coon	<u>khun coon</u> kèn phaasăa thaj máj	Is John good in Thai?
ankrát	khun coon kèn phaasăa <u>ankrát</u> máj	Is John good in English?
prichaa	khun <u>prichaa</u> kèn phaasăa ankrát máj	Is Prichaa good in English?
farànsèet	khun prichaa kèn phaasăa <u>farànsèet</u> máj	Is Prichaa good in French?
khruu kháw	<u>khruu kháw</u> kèn phaasăa farànsèet máj	Is his teacher good in French?
laaw	khruu kháw kèn phaasăa <u>laaw</u> máj	Is his teacher good in Lao?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### s) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	nákrian khon nán rian nánŕsŕy kèn	That student learns rapidly.
kháw	<u>kháw</u> rian nánŕsŕy kèn	He learns rapidly.
khŕian nánŕsŕy thaj	kháw <u>khŕian</u> <u>nánŕsŕy</u> <u>thaj</u> kèn	He writes Thai well.
khun	<u>khun</u> khŕian nánŕsŕy thaj kèn	You write Thai well.
phŕut phaasăa juan	khun <u>phŕut</u> <u>phaasăa</u> <u>juan</u> kèn	You speak Vietnamese well.
khruu phŕm	<u>khruu</u> <u>phŕm</u> phŕut phaasăa juan kèn	My teacher speaks Vietnamese well.
sŕon nánŕsŕy	khruu phŕm <u>sŕon</u> <u>nánŕsŕy</u> kèn	My teacher teaches well.

### 6.3 EXERCISES

- Using a weekly news magazine or daily newspaper have one student find out from another what the nationality of various people is.<sup>1</sup>
- Have one student find out from another what languages are spoken in Asia. (Use map on page 85.)
- Have students find out what languages other students speak and how well.
- Have students find out what city and state other students come from.

---

<sup>1</sup>To the instructor: Have the students ask the questions in as many different ways as possible.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 6.4 COMPREHENSION TEST

The teacher reads each of the passages below two times at normal speed with a pause between the two readings. The students listen and take notes if they wish. Then the teacher asks them the questions below. The students are not to look at the book during this time.

- A. phǒm mii phŷan. kháw pen khèek, maa càak malajuu.  
kháw phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj.
1. phŷan phǒm phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj máj
  2. kháw pen faràn, châj máj khráp
  3. kháw maa càak prathêet nǎj
- B. khruu phǒm kèn phaasǎa phaamâa. kháw pen khon ameerikan  
phanrajaa kháw thamnaan thŷi juusít
1. phanrajaa khǒon khruu phǒm mâj dâj thamnaan rý khráp
  2. khruu phǒm phûut phaasǎa phaamâa dâj máj
  3. khruu pen faràn, châj máj
- C. thahǎan maa càak prathêet jæraman. kháw pen khon  
jæraman phanrajaa kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj.
1. thahǎan mii phanrajaa rý khráp
  2. khruu phaasǎa thaj pen khon jæraman, châj máj
  3. thahǎan pen khèek, châj máj
- D. kháw pen khèek, maa càak prathêet india. kháw pen mǒo,  
thamnaan thŷi roonphajabaan culaa. kháw chŷy waanii.
1. khun mǒo chŷy araj
  2. kháw thamnaan rýplàaw
  3. kháw thamnaan thŷinǎj

4. kháw pen khèek, châj máj
  5. kháw maa càak prathêet malajuu, châj máj
  6. khun waanii pen araj thîi roonphajabaaan culaa
- E. nákrían pen khèek indoniisia. kháw rian phaasăa juan. kháw rian kèn mâak. phanrajaa kháw pen faràn, maa càak parîit. khun mēe kháw maa càak kruŋ jaakaatâa
1. nákrían rian phaasăa araj
  2. kháw rian kèn máj
  3. phanrajaa kháw mâj dâj pen khèek rýkhráp
  4. khun mēe maa càak năj
  5. nákrían kèn phaasăa juan máj
  6. nákrían pen faràn, châj máj
  7. thîi kruŋ jaakaatâa kháw phûut phaasăa ciiin, châj máj khráp
- F. phýan phôm kèn phaasăa kawlii. kháw pen faràn, maa càak prathêet italii. kháw thamŋaan thîi kruŋ room. kháw pen thahăan
1. phýan khun pen mǔo châj máj khráp
  2. kháw kèn phaasăa araj
  3. kháw pen khon châat araj
  4. kháw maa càak prathêet năj
  5. kháw pen khèek, châj máj
  6. kháw thamŋaan rýplàaw
  7. kháw thamŋaan thîinăj

G. nîi rûup phanrajaa phôm. rûup nîi sǔaj mâak. kháw pen khon  
ciin, maa càak hōonkon. kháw mâj dâj thamnaan, pen  
mêebâan

1. nîi rûup phanrajaa phôm, châj máj
2. phanrajaa phôm pen khon châat araj
3. kháw pen khruu thîinǎj
4. rûup phanrajaa phôm sǔaj máj
5. phanrajaa phôm thamnaan rýplàaw

### 6.5 VOCABULARY

ameerikaa	America
ameerikan	American
aŋkrít	England, English
india	India, Indian
indoniisia	Indonesia, Indonesian
indianâa	Indiana
italîan	Italian (italîi 'Italy')
óosatreelia	Australia, Australian
bóssatân	Boston
càak	from
caŋ	extremely, a great deal

## THAI BASIC COURSE

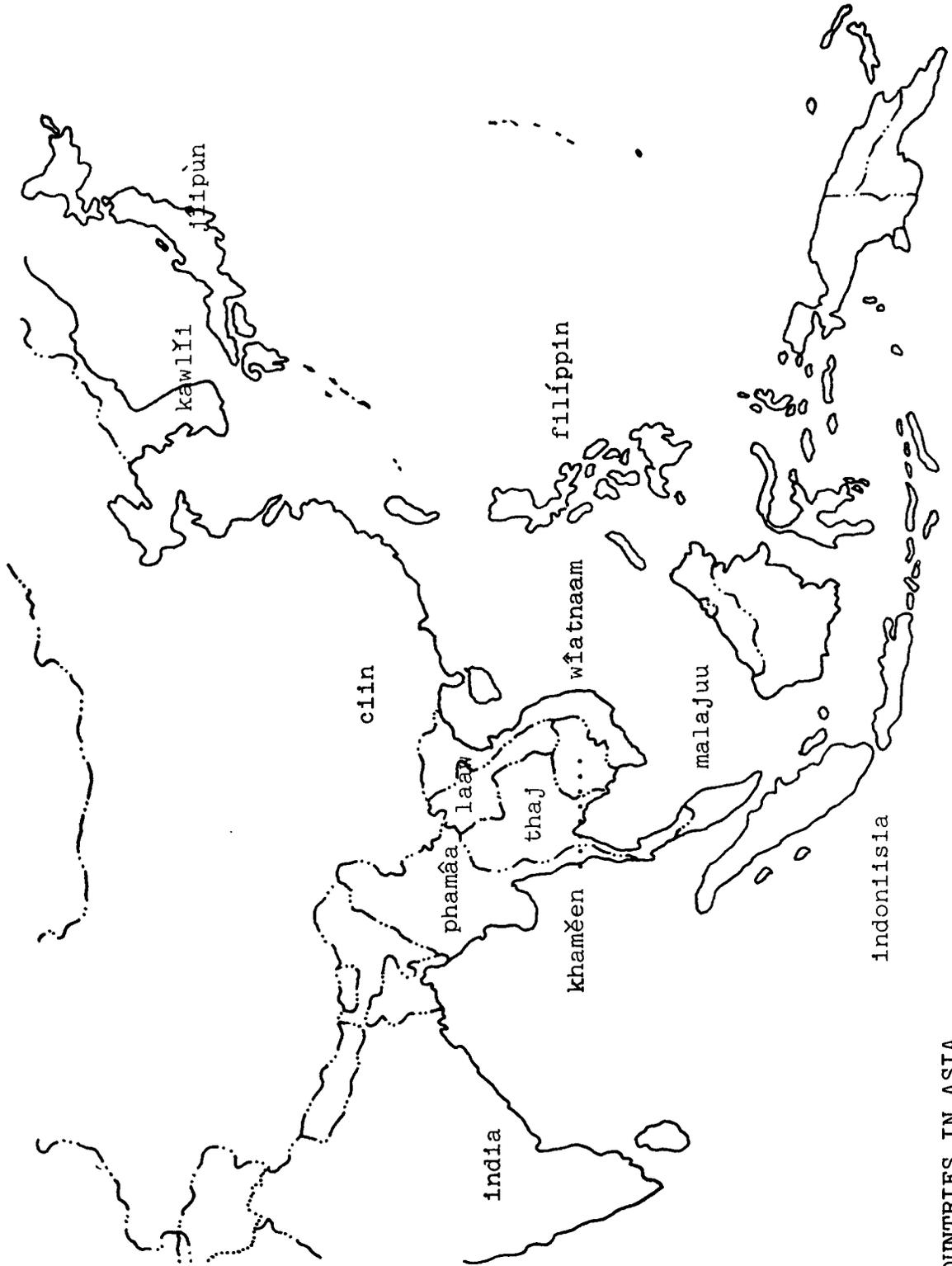
---

châat (châat)	nationality, nation, race
ciin	China, Chinese
denwêə	Denver
faràŋ (khon)	white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, white Americans, etc.
faràŋsèet	France, French
filíppin	Philippines, Philippine
hōŋkōŋ	Hong Kong
jæraman	Germany, German
jîipùn	Japan, Japanese
juan	Vietnam, Vietnamese
kawlŷi	Korea, Korean
kèŋ	to be expert, skillful (at doing something)
khaměen	Cambodia, Cambodian
khèek (khon)	dark-skinned people, Moslems and Hindus in particular
khŷan	to write
kruŋ (kruŋ)	city (used to refer to some capitol cities)
krunthêep	Bangkok
laaw	Laos, Lao, Laotian
loondoon	London

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mâak	very much, a lot of
malajuu	Malaya
míchíkæen	Michigan
myan (myan)	city, country (nation)
nít nõoj	a little
njuu jóok	New York
parít	Paris
pattani	Pattini (city in South Thailand)
phaasǎa (phaasǎa)	language, speech
phamâa	Burma, Burmese
rát (rát)	state, nation
rian	to study, learn
room	Rome
sapeen	Spain
saan fransisko	San Francisco
sǎon	to teach
thaj	Thai
thâwnán	only, only that (much)
tooklaw	Tokyo
wíatnaam	Vietnam, Vietnamese





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) Observe the difference in meaning between kèn 'good' (in the sense of skillful) and dii 'good' (in general).

kháw pen khon dii 'He's a good (or nice) person.'

kháw rian nánsǎy kèn 'He's a good student (studies well).'

- d) paj nǎj is frequently used as a casual greeting.

### 7.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) khəej + Verb Phrase is used to refer to experience in the past.

kháw khəej pen khruu 'He used to be a teacher.'

khun khəej paj myan̄thaj máj 'Have you ever been to Thailand?'

The affirmative response to khəej + Verb Phrase + máj questions is khəej; the negative response is máj khəej.

- b) paj 'to go' and maa 'to come' may be followed by place expressions (roonrian, etc.) or by Verb Phrases indicating an activity (syy khǎon 'buy things', etc.). Either the place expression or Verb Phrase may be replaced by nǎj in questions, thus

Q: paj nǎj 'Where are you going? (or) 'What are you going (someplace) to do?'

A: paj roonrian '(I'm) going to school.'

(or) paj syy khǎon '(I'm) going shopping.'

- c) Since the verb in Thai does not have changes in form to correlate with changes in time (tense changes), a sentence like phǎm paj roonrian might be interpreted as 'I'm going to school', 'I go to school', or 'I went to school'. This does not usually result in ambiguity, however, since the context the utterance occurs in usually makes it clear which interpretation is intended.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) The pronoun subject may be omitted anytime its omission does not result in misunderstanding. Observe these examples:

B: paj nǎj 'Where are (you) going?'

A: paj talàat khráp '(I'm) going to the market.'

The pronoun is sometimes omitted in statements; it is frequently omitted in questions, and is almost always omitted in responses to questions.

- e) The sentence + dâj construction is used to indicate that something is 'possible, suitable, all right', thus

phǒm phūut phaasǎa thaj dâj 'I can speak Thai.'

khun phūut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj 'Can you speak Thai?'

Affirmative response: dâj khráp 'Yes, I can.'

Negative response: mâj dâj khráp 'No, I can't.'

Since dâj is considered to be the main verb in constructions of this type, the negative mâj is placed just before it in negative statements, thus:

kháw paj talàat mâj dâj 'She is unable to go to the market.'

The subject of the sentence is the sentence kháw paj talàat.

- f) The Sentence + pen construction is used to indicate that 'someone knows how to perform some activity', thus:

Statement: phǒm khàp rót pen 'I know how to drive a car.'

Negative statement:

kháw lên dontrii mâj pen 'He doesn't know how to play a musical instrument.'

Question: khun lên dontrii thaj pen máj 'Can you play a Thai music?'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Affirmative response: pen kháp 'Yes, I can.'

Negative response: mâj pen kháp 'No, I can't.'

pen is considered the main verb in constructions of this type; consequently, the negative mâj is placed just in front of it, and it is the normal response to questions. The sentence khun lên dontrii thaj is the subject of the combined sentence.

- g) In situations where ability to do something is a matter of having learned the technique of doing it, either pen or dâj may be used interchangeably, thus:

phôm phûut phaasǎa thaj  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dâj} \\ \text{pen} \end{array} \right.$  'I can speak Thai.'

In situations in which inability to do something results not from a lack of technique or skill but for other reasons, only dâj and not pen can be used.

phôm khàp rót pen, tèe wanníi 'I know how to drive a  
khàp mâj dâj. phôm mâj sabaaj car, but I can't drive  
today. I don't feel  
well.'

- h) Both khəej 'used to' and dâj or pen can occur in the same sentence, thus:

kháw khəej lên dontrii pen 'He used to be able to  
play music.'

khun khəej phûut phaasǎa ciin 'Were you formerly able  
pen máj to speak Chinese?'

The affirmative response to this question is khəej 'Yes, I was.', the negative response is mâj khəej 'No, I wasn't.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 7.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
1. ráanaahǎan	paj <u>ráanaahǎan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the restaurant.
2. roonrian	paj <u>roonrian</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the school.
3. thǐithamṇaan	paj <u>thǐithamṇaan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the office.
4. talàat	paj <u>talàat</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the market.
5. roonphajabaan	paj <u>roonphajabaan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the hospital.
6. thanakhaan	paj <u>thanakhaan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the bank.
7. bâan	klàp <u>bâan</u> khráp	(I'm) going home.
8. prajsanii	paj <u>prajsanii</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the Post Office.
9. ráankhǎajkhǒṇ	paj <u>ráankhǎajkhǒṇ</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the shops.
10. roonreem eerawan	paj <u>roonreem eerawan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the Erawan Hotel.

#### b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
roonrian	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>roonrian</u> khráp To school.
thǐithamṇaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thǐithamṇaan</u> khráp To the office.
ráanaahǎan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>ráanaahǎan</u> khráp To the restaurant?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

prajsani1	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>prajsani1</u> khráp To the Post Office.
ráankhǎajkhǒŋ	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>ráankhǎajkhǒŋ</u> khráp To the shops.
thanaakhaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thanaakhaan</u> khráp To the bank.
talàat	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>talàat</u> khráp To the market.
bâan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	klàp <u>bâan</u> khráp Home.

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	phǒm paj thamŋaan khráp	I went <sup>1</sup> to work.
rian nánŋsǎy	phǒm paj <u>rian nánŋsǎy</u> khráp	I went to school.
kháw	<u>kháw</u> paj rian nánŋsǎy khráp	He went to school.
thĭaw	kháw paj <u>thĭaw</u> khráp	He went out (for fun).
sýy khǒŋ	kháw paj <u>sýy khǒŋ</u> khráp	He went shopping.
kin kaafɛɛ	kháw paj <u>kin kaafɛɛ</u> khráp	He went to drink coffee.
kin khâaw	kháw paj <u>kin khâaw</u> khráp	He went to eat.
sòŋ còtmǎaj	kháw paj <u>sòŋ còtmǎaj</u> khráp	He went to mail a letter.
phǒm	<u>phǒm</u> paj sòŋ còtmǎaj khráp	I went to mail off a letter.
hǎa mǒɔ	phǒm paj <u>hǎa mǒɔ</u> khráp	I went to see a doctor.
thoorasàp	phǒm paj <u>thoorasàp</u> khráp	I went to telephone.
thamŋaan	phǒm paj <u>thamŋaan</u> khráp	I went to work.

---

<sup>1</sup>paj could be translated as 'go, is/are going, or went'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
thamṇaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thamṇaan</u> khráp To work.
roonṇrian	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>roonṇrian</u> khráp To school.
rian nǎnṣṣy	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>rian nǎnṣṣy</u> khráp To study.
sýy khṣṣṇ thīi ráan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>sýy khṣṣṇ thīi ráan</u> khráp To buy something at a shop.
sṇ còtmǎaj	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>sṇ còtmǎaj</u> khráp To mail a letter.
thoorasàp	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thoorasàp</u> khráp To telephone.
thamṇaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thamṇaan</u> khráp To work.
kin kaafṣṣ thīi ráan thíp thóp	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>kin kaafṣṣ thīi ráan thíp thóp</u> To drink cofee at the Tip Top shop.
kin khâaw thīi raamâa	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>kin khâaw thīi raamâa</u> To eat at the Rama.
hǎa mṣṣ thīi sǎathoon	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>hǎa mṣṣ thīi sǎathoon</u> To see a doctor on Sathorn (street).

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thĭaw	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thĭaw</u> Out (for pleasure).
thĭaw talàatnát	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thĭaw talàatnát</u> Out to the market (special one day market) for fun.
thurá thĭi sathǎanthūut	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thurá thĭi sathǎan</u> <u>thūut</u> To the embassy on business.

### e) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. chianmàj	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>chianmàj</u> He comes from Chiangmai Province.
2. ùttaradìt	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>ùttaradìt</u> He comes from Uttaradit Province.
3. phĭtsanulôok	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>phĭtsanulôok</u> . He comes from Pitsanuloke Province.
4. udoon	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>udoon</u> . He comes from Udorn Province.
5. khǒon kèen	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>khǒon kèen</u> . He comes from Khonkaen Province.
6. nakhoon râatchasĭmaa	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>nakhoon râatchasĭmaa</u> He comes from Korat Province.
7. lópburi	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>lópburi</u> . He comes from Lopburi Province.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. ajútthajaa      kháw maa càak caṇwàt ajútthajaa.  
He comes from Ayuthaya Province.
9. krunthêep      kháw maa càak krunthêep.<sup>1</sup>  
He comes from Bangkok.
10. raâtburii      kháw maa càak caṇwàt raâtburii.  
He comes from Ratburi Province.
11. nakhoon sǐi      kháw maa càak caṇwàt nakhoon sǐi thammarâat.  
thammarâat      He comes from Nakorn Sri Thammarat Province.
12. phétburii      kháw maa càak caṇwàt phétburii.  
He comes from Phetburi Province.
13. sǒṅkhlǎa      kháw maa càak caṇwàt sǒṅkhlǎa.  
He comes from Songkla Province.
14. jalaa      kháw maa càak caṇwàt jalaa.  
He comes from Yala Province.
15. ubon      kháw maa càak caṇwàt ubon.

### f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. jalaa	kháw pen chaaw <u>jalaa</u> . He's a native of Yala.
2. sǒṅkhlǎa	kháw pen chaaw <u>sǒṅkhlǎa</u> . He's a native of Songkla.
3. nakhoon sǐi thammarâat	kháw pen chaaw <u>nakhoon sǐi thammarâat</u> . He's a native of Nakorn Sri Thammarat.

---

<sup>1</sup>By government division it is called caṇwàt phránakhoon.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. phétburii                   kháw pen chaaw phétburii.  
                                  He's a native of Phetburi.
5. râatburii                   kháw pen chaaw râatburii.  
                                  He's a native of Ratburi.
6. krunthêep                  kháw pen chaaw krunthêep.  
                                  He's a native of Bangkok.
7. ajútthajaa                 kháw pen chaaw ajútthajaa.  
                                  He's a native of Ayuthaya.
8. lópburii                   kháw pen chaaw lópburii.  
                                  He's a native of Lopburi.
9. khorâat                   kháw pen chaaw khorâat.  
                                  He's a native of Khorat.
10. ubon                      kháw pen chaaw ubon.  
                                  He's a native of Ubol.
11. khǒn kĕen                 kháw pen chaaw khǒn kĕen  
                                  He's a native of Khonkaen.
12. udon                      kháw pen chaaw udon  
                                  He's a native of Udon.
13. phítsanulôok             kháw pen chaaw phítsanulôok  
                                  He's a native of Pitsanuloke.
14. uttaradìt                 kháw pen chaaw uttaradìt.  
                                  He's a native of Uttaradit.
15. chiaṃmàj                 kháw pen chaaw chiaṃmàj  
                                  He's a native of Chiangmai.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
klaan	lópburì jùu naj phâak araj What part (of Thailand) is Lopburi in?	jùu naj phâak <u>klaan</u> It's in the Central part.
nÿa	chianmàj jùu naj phâak araj What part is Chiangmai in?	jùu naj phâak <u>nÿa</u> It's in the Northern part.
isăan	udoon jùu naj phâak araj What part is Udorn in?	jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u> It's in the N.E. part.
nÿa	uttaradìt jùu naj phâak araj What part is Uttaradit in?	jùu naj phâak <u>nÿa</u> It's in the Northern part.
isăan	khōnkēen jùu naj phâak araj What part is Konkaen in?	jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u> It's in the N.E. part.
klaan	phétburì jùu naj phâak araj What part is Petburi in?	jùu naj phâak <u>klaan</u> It's in the Central part.
tâj	sōnkhlăa jùu naj phâak araj What part is Songkla in?	jùu naj pàk <u>tâj</u> It's in the Southern part.
isăan	khoorâat jùu naj phâak araj What part is Korat in?	jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u> It's in the N.E. part.
tâj	jalaa jùu naj phâak araj What part is Yala in?	jùu naj pàk <u>tâj</u> It's in the Southern part.
isăan	ubon jùu naj phâak araj What part is Ubol in?	jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u> It's in the N.E. part.

h) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. kháw maa càak caŋwàt chianmàj.<br>He comes from Chiangmai<br>Province.      | kháw pen khon chianmàj.<br>He's a native of Chiangmai<br>Province.      |
| 2. kháw maa càak caŋwàt jalaa.<br>He comes from Yala<br>Province.              | kháw pen khon jalaa.<br>He's a native of Yala<br>Province.              |
| 3. kháw maa càak caŋwàt lópburii.<br>He comes from Lopburi<br>Province.        | kháw pen khon lópburii.<br>He's a native of<br>Lopburi Province.        |
| 4. kháw maa càak caŋwàt ajútthajaa.<br>He comes from Ayuthaya<br>Province.     | kháw pen khon ajútthajaa.<br>He's a native of Ayuthaya<br>Province.     |
| 5. kháw maa càak caŋwàt ùttaradit.<br>He comes from Uttaradit<br>Province.     | kháw pen khon ùttaradit<br>He's a native of Uttaradit<br>Province.      |
| 6. kháw maa càak caŋwàt phítsanulôok<br>He comes from Pitsanuloke<br>Province. | kháw pen khon phítsanulôok<br>He's a native of<br>Pitsanuloke Province. |
| 7. kháw maa càak krunthêep<br>He comes from Bangkok.                           | kháw pen khon krunthêep<br>He's a 'Bangkoker'.                          |
| 8. kháw maa càak tàaŋcaŋwàt<br>He's from the provinces.                        | kháw pen khon tàaŋcaŋwàt<br>He's a 'out-of-towner.'                     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### i) Response Drill

Teacher:	jalaa	Yala.
<u>Student 1:</u>	kháw maa càak caṅwàt jalaa.	He comes from Yala Province.
<u>Student 2:</u>	kháw pen khon jalaa rǎ khráp	He's a native of Yala, is he?
<u>Student 1:</u>	khráp	Yes (he is).

Continue the drill by substituting the following names for Yala:

- |               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ubon       | 9. ùttaradìt                |
| 2. udooṅ      | 10. phítsanulôok            |
| 3. lópburií   | 11. khǒnkèen                |
| 4. ajútthajaa | 12. nakhoon sǐi thamarâat   |
| 5. chianmàj   | 13. nakhoon râat chasǐmaa   |
| 6. râatburií  | 14. phránakhoon / krunthêep |
| 7. phétburií  | 15. jalaa                   |
| 8. sǒṅkhlǎa   |                             |

### j) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

kháw pen khon lópburií.  
kháw pen khon jalaa.  
kháw pen khon sǒṅkhlǎa  
kháw pen khon phítsanulôok  
kháw pen khon khǒnkèen  
kháw pen khon krunthêep  
kháw pen khon tàaṅcaṅwàt

#### Pattern 2

kháw pen chaaw lópburií.  
kháw pen chaaw jalaa.  
kháw pen chaaw sǒṅkhlǎa  
kháw pen chaaw phítsanulôok  
kháw pen chaaw khǒnkèen  
kháw pen chaaw krunthêep  
kháw pen chaaw tàaṅcaṅwàt



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m) Substitution Drill

Teacher: kháw maa càak phâak klaaŋ He comes from the  
Central part.  
: isǎan Northeast.

Student: kháw maa càak phâak isǎan He comes from the  
Northeast.

Continue the drill by substituting the following items  
after phâak:

- |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. nǎa   | 4. klaaŋ | 8. klaaŋ  |
| 2. tâj   | 5. isǎan | 9. tâj    |
| 3. isǎan | 6. tâj   | 10. klaaŋ |
|          | 7. nǎa   |           |

### n) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. nǎa	kháw maa càak phâak <u>nǎa</u> . He comes from the North.	kháw pen khon phâak <u>nǎa</u> . He's a Northerner.
2. isǎan	kháw maa càak phâak <u>isǎan</u> . He comes from the Northeast.	kháw pen khon phâak <u>isǎan</u> . He's a 'Northeasterner'.
3. tâj	kháw maa càak pàk <u>tâj</u> . He comes from the South.	kháw pen khon pàk <u>tâj</u> . He's a Southerner.
4. klaaŋ	kháw maa càak phâak <u>klaaŋ</u> . He comes from the Central part.	kháw pen khon phâak <u>klaaŋ</u> . He's a native of the Central part.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Substitution Drill

Teacher: tâj South

Student 1: kháw maa càak pàk tâj He comes from the South.

Student 2: kháw pen khon pàk tâj rǎy Is he a Southerner?

Student 1: khráp Yes, he is.

Continue the drill by substituting the following items for tâj:

- |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. klaaŋ | 4. tâj   | 8. tâj    |
| 2. nǎa   | 5. nǎa   | 9. nǎa    |
| 3. isǎan | 6. isǎan | 10. isǎan |
|          | 7. klaaŋ |           |

### p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. nǎa	kháw pen khon phâak <u>nǎa</u> . He's a Northerner.	kháw pen chaaw <u>nǎa</u> . He's a Northerner.
2. isǎan	kháw pen khon phâak <u>isǎan</u> . He's a Northeasterner.	kháw pen chaaw <u>isǎan</u> . He's a Northeasterner.
3. tâj	kháw pen khon pàk <u>tâj</u> . He's a Southerner.	kháw pen chaaw <u>tâj</u> . He's a Southerner.
4. klaaŋ	kháw pen khon phâak <u>klaaŋ</u> . He's a native of the Central part.	kháw pen chaaw phâak <u>klaaŋ</u> . He's a Central Thai resident.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### q) Response Drill

Teacher: tâj South.

Student 1: khun maa càak phâak năj What part do you  
come from?

Student 2: pàk tâj From the South.

Student 1: ôo, khun pen chaaw pàk Oh, you're a  
tâj rěkháp Southerner?

Student 2: khráp Yes, I am.

Continue the drill by substituting the following words  
for tâj:

- |          |          |         |          |
|----------|----------|---------|----------|
| 1. năa   | 3. klaan | 5. năa  | 7. isăan |
| 2. isăan | 4. tâj   | 6. tătj | 8. năa   |

### r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. khon phâak klaan phûut phaasăa<br>krunthêep     | People from Central Thailand<br>speak Bangkok Thai. |
| 2. khon pàk tâj phûut phaasăa<br>pàk tâj           | Southerners speak Southern<br>Thai.                 |
| 3. khon phâak isăan phûut phaasăa<br>(phâak) isăan | Northeasterners speak<br>Northeastern Thai.         |
| 4. khon phâak năa phûut phaasăa<br>(phâak) năa     | Northerners speak Northern<br>Thai                  |

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

s) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	khun khəej <u>paj myan̄thaj</u> máj Have you ever been to Thailand?
rúucàk kháw	khun khəej <u>rúucàk kháw</u> máj Have you ever met him?
paj chian̄màj	khun khəej <u>paj chian̄màj</u> máj Have you ever been to Chiangmai?
rian phaasǎa farànsèet	khun khəej <u>rian phaasǎa farànsèet</u> máj. Have you ever studied French?
jùu tàan̄prathêet	khun khəej <u>jùu tàan̄prathêet</u> máj Have you ever lived abroad?
tham̄naan kàp kháw	khun khəej <u>tham̄naan kàp kháw</u> máj Have you ever worked with him?
pen khruu	khun khəej <u>pen khruu</u> máj Were you ever a teacher?
lên don̄triì pen	khun khəej <u>lên don̄triì pen</u> máj Did you used to be able to play music?

t) Response Drill (Answers based on facts)

MODEL: <u>Teacher:</u>	khun khəej paj myan̄thaj máj	Have you ever been to Thailand?
<u>Student:</u>	mâj khəej khráp khəej khráp	No, I haven't. Yes, I have.

1. khun khəej thaan aahǎan thaj máj      Have you ever eaten Thai food?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. khun khəej rúucàk diin ras(k) máj      Have you ever met Dean Rusk?
3. khun khəej paj thfaw júróop máj      Have you ever been to Europe?
4. khun khəej paj thamnaan kàp khun      Have you ever worked with  
    (name of a student) máj      \_\_\_\_\_?
5. khun khəej phûut phaasăa thaj      Have you ever talked Thai  
    kàp khon thaj máj      with a Thai?
6. khun khəej phûut phaasăa ciin      Did you used to be able to  
    dâj. máj      speak Chinese?

u) Combination Drill (Combine these sentences with dâj.)

1. kháw phûut phaasăa thaj
2. phanrajaa kháw paj thfaw
3. phûujĩŋ khon nán tênram
4. thahăan khon nán wâajnáam
5. nákrían khon níi àan nánsŷy thaj
6. khèek malajuu phûut phaasăa thaj
7. khruu farànsèet khon nán phûut phaasăa jèeraman
8. khun prasèet lèn dontrii
9. khun prapâat paj lèn kóof
10. faràn khon nán lèn dontrii thaj

v) Combination Drill (Combine the sentences in drill s with mâj dâj.)

w) Response Drill (Give an affirmative response to each questions.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw phûut phaasăa jîipùn dâj máj Can he speak Japanese?	dâj khráp Yes, he can.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 2. phanrajaa kháw paj thġaw dġj máj<br>Can his wife go out for pleasure?                                | dġj khráp<br>Yes, she can.  |
| 3. khun pġet nġatġn dġj máj<br>Can you open the window?   | dġj khráp<br>Yes, I can.    |
| 4. nákrġan khon nġn duu nánsġy dġj máj<br>Is that student able to look at<br>the book (or do homework)? | dġj khráp<br>Yes, he is.    |
| 5. khon ciġn phġut phaasġa ciġn dġj máj<br>Can Chinese people speak Chinese?                            | dġj khráp<br>Yes, they can. |
| 6. chġaj sġn dġnsġo hġj phġm dġj máj<br>Can you hand me the pencil, please?                             | dġj khráp<br>Yes, I can     |
| 7. khruu phġan khun sġn phaasġa aġkrġt dġj máj<br>Can your friend's teacher teach English?              | dġj khráp<br>Yes, she can.  |
| 8. kháw paj sġy khġon dġj máj<br>Can she go shopping?   | dġj khráp<br>Yes, she can.  |
| 9. khun jġu tġanprathġet dġj máj<br>Can you live abroad?  | dġj khráp<br>Yes, I can.    |
| 10. kháw rġan phaasġa phamġa dġj máj<br>Is he able to study Burmese?                                    | dġj khráp<br>Yes, he is.    |
- x) Response Drill. (Give negative responses to the questions in drill u.)

y) Combination Drill (Combine the following sentences with pen.)

1. kháw khàp rót
2. phǒm lèn dontrií
3. phanrajaa kháw tham kàpkhâaw
4. kháw khǎan phaasǎa ciin
5. khun thǎawoon phim nánsǎy
6. phûuchǎawchaan khon nán lèn tennít
7. nákrían khon nán phûut phaasǎa tàanprathêet
8. phýan khun kĕe rót
9. khruu kháw sǎon nánsǎy
10. phǒm phûut phaasǎa rátsia

z) Combination Drill (Combine the sentences in drill w with mâj pen.)

aa) Response Drill

Respond to the following questions affirmatively or negatively as the situation indicates using pen or mâj pen.

1. khun tham kàpkhâaw pen máj
2. khĕek india phûut phaasǎa juan pen máj
3. nákrían thǎinǎi wâaj náam pen máj
4. khon juan phûut phaasǎa phamâa pen máj
5. khruu khun sǎon nánsǎy pen máj
6. khun lèn dontrií pen máj
7. phýan khon thaj khǎon khun kĕe rót pen máj
8. faràn khon nán phûut phaasǎa thaj pen máj
9. sǎamii khun mĕerǎi sýy aahǎan pen máj
10. phýan khun khàp rya pen máj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### ab) Situation Response Drill

Listen to the description of the situation and to the cue words, then one student forms a question with pen or dâj and another answers it. Both the question and the answer should fit the situation.

	<u>Situation</u>	<u>Cue words</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1.	kháw mâj sabaaj  He's ill.	khàp rôt  drive (a car)	kháw khàp rôt dâj máj Can he drive?	mâj dâj khráp  No, he can't.
2.	kháw mâj khœaj lên dontri  He's never played music	lên dontri  play music	kháw lên dontri pen máj Can he play music?	mâj pen  No, he can't.
3.	khun malícan tham kàpkhâaw thúk wan Malichanh cooks everyday.	tham kàpkhâaw  cook	kháw tham kàpkhâaw pen máj Can she cook?	pen khráp  Yes, she can.
4.	kháw pen khon farànsèet  He's French.	phûut phaasăa farànsèet  speak French	kháw phûut phaasăa farànsèet dâj máj Can he speak French?	dâj khráp  Yes, he can.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. kháw pen phôokháa khǎaj khǒŋ kǎw khǎaj pen khráp  
 khǒŋ pen máj  
 He's a merchant. sell things Can he sell things? Yes, he can.
6. kháw mâj khəej khǎan phaasǎa kháw khǎan mâj dâj khráp  
 rian phaasǎa thaj phaasǎa thaj  
 thaj dâj máj  
 He has never studied Thai. write Thai Can he write Thai? No, he can't.
7. kháw pen thahǎan wâaj náam kháw wâaj náam pen khráp  
 rya pen máj  
 He's a sailor. swim Can he swim? Yes, he can.
8. kháw khəej pen phûut phaasǎa kháw phûut dâj khráp  
 khruu phaasǎa ciin phaasǎa ciin  
 ciin dâj máj  
 He used to be a Chinese teacher. speak Can he speak Chinese? Yes, he can.
9. phǎan khǒŋ phǒm khàprót kháw khàp rót mâj pen khráp  
 mâj khəej khàp pen máj  
 rót læj  
 My friend has never driven a car at all. drive a car Can he drive a car? No, he can't.
10. saamǎi khun sýy kàpkhâaw kháw sýy pen khráp  
 nonkhraan paj kàpkhâaw  
 talàat thúk wan pen máj  
 Nongkran's husband goes to the market everyday. buy food Does he know how to shop for food? Yes, he does.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 7.4 EXERCISES

- a) Find out what section and province different instructors come from.
- b) Find out which students in the class know how to:
- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. drive a car | 5. dance        |
| 2. cook        | 6. type         |
| 3. play tennis | 7. play music   |
| 4. swim        | 8. repair a car |

Find out if they do the above things well.

- c) Ask a student if he is able to:
- |                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. close the classroom door | 4. turn off the lights |
| 2. open the window          | 5. open the door       |
| 3. open his book            | 6. close his notebook  |

If he says he is able to do so, ask him to do it.

If he says he is unable to do so, tell him not to do it.

- d) Find out if different student in the class have ever:
1. been to various countries
  2. lived in different provinces in Thailand
  3. been to different cities and countries on pleasure trips
  4. lived in various cities and states in the U.S.
- e) Give each student in the class an index card, on which he is to write 6 items of information taken from the following categories:

I. Name: self, wife, relations, teacher, friend, etc.

II. Occupation

III. Location of occupation: place, city, country, part of country, etc.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- IV. Nationality: country, state, province, etc.
- V. Language speaking ability: native, others, dialects of languages
- VI. Travel experience: Travel or residence, for pleasure or business
- VII. Skills: driving a car, playing tennis, playing music, etc.

The students take turns asking questions so as to find out what has been written on the card. All students take notes.

As soon as the information on a card has been discovered, another student is quizzed about the information on his card. Continue this until all cards have been examined.

### 7.5 VOCABULARY

ajútthajaa	Ayuthaya (city in Central Thailand)
eerawan	Erawan (name of hotel)
isǎan	northeast (in Thailand)
ubon	Ubon (city in Northeast Thailand)
udoon	Udorn (city in Northeast Thailand)
ùttaradìt	Uttaradit (city in North Thailand)
bâan (lǎn)	house, home
caṅwàt	province
chaaw (khon)	resident, native
chianmàj	Chiangmai (city in North Thailand)
còtmǎaj (chabàp)	letter (to mail)
diin ras(k)	Dean Rusk
dontrii	music
hǎa	(to go) to see, visit, to look for, seek
jalaa	Yala (city in South Thailand)

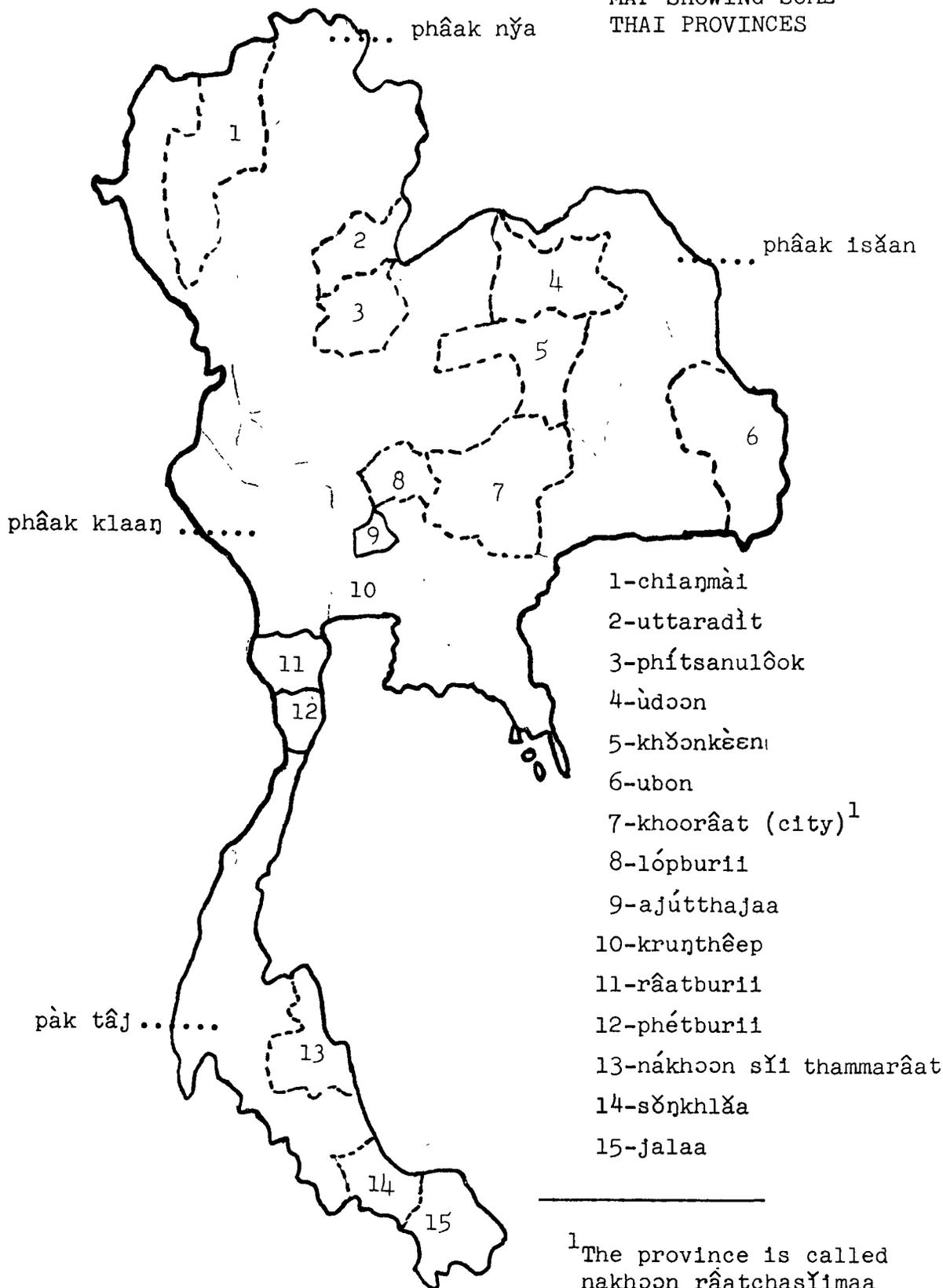
## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

jùu	to live, stay; to be located at
júròop	Europe
kaafɛɛ	coffee
kàp, ka-	with
kàpkhâaw	food, something to eat with rice
kêɛ	to fix, correct (something)
khâaw	rice
khàp rôt	to drive a car
khəəj	to have ever (done something) used to (be something, etc.)
khǒnkɛ̀en	Khonkaen (city in Northeastern Thailand)
khǒŋ	thing, object, of, belonging to
kin	to eat or drink something (common usage)
klaan	central, middle, neutral
klàp... (paj/maa)	to go back (return), to come back
lên	to play (games, music, etc.)
lópburii	Lopburi (city in Central Thailand)
mǒo (khon)	doctor (medical)
nakhòon rāatchasimaa	Korat (Nakorn ratchasima) (city in Northeastern Thailand)
nakhòonsǐi thammarâat	Nakorn Sri Thammarat (city in Southern Thailand)
nǎa	north, above
pàk	part (with <u>pàk tāj</u> 'Southern Part' only)
phâak (phâak)	part, region, section
phétburii	Phetburi (city in Central Thailand)
phim (diit)	to typewrite
phítsanulôok	Pitsanuloke (city in Northern Thailand)
phránakòon	Bangkok (official name of the province the city of Bangkok is located in)
prajsanii	the post office

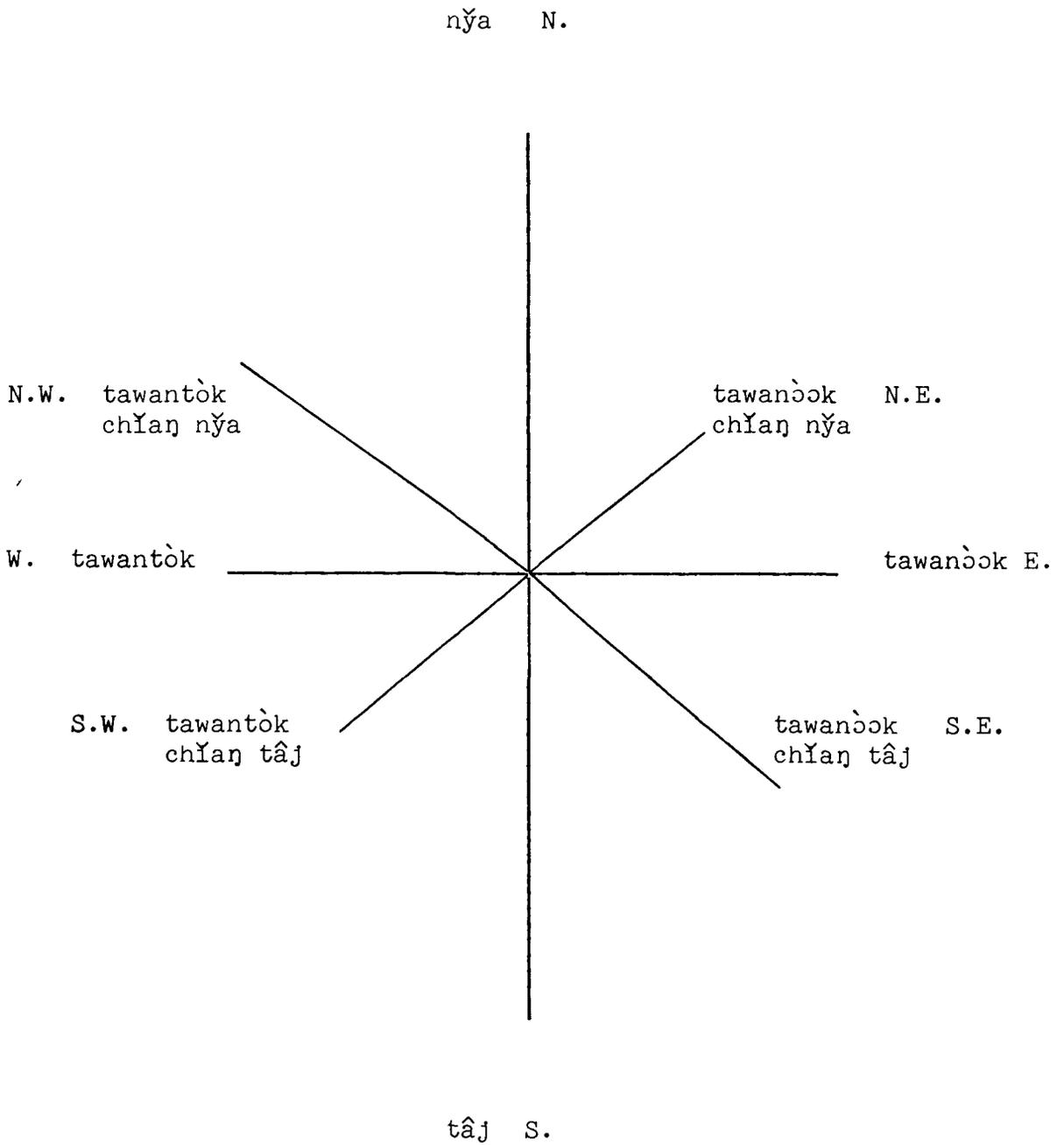
raamâa	the Rama (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
ráan (hèn, ráan)	shop, store
ráanaahăan (ráan)	restaurant
ráankhăajkhǒn (ráan)	shop, store
râatburii	Ratburi (city in Central Thailand)
roonphajabaan (roon, hèn)	hospital
roonrĕem (roonrĕem-hèn)	hotel
rót (khan)	car
rýplàaw	question word (negative)
săathoon	Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sathăanthûut (hèn)	embassy
sǒnkhlăa	Songkla (city in South Thailand)
sýy	to buy, (with <u>khǒn</u> 'to shop')
tàanĉanwát	in the provinces, out-of-town
tâj	South, under
talàat (hèn)	market
talàat nát (hèn)	a special kind of market which is open regularly on a certain day
tennít	tennis
tênram	to dance (Western style)
thaan	to eat, drink (elegant term)
tham	to do, make
thamĉaan	to work
thanaakhaan (hèn)	bank
thĭithamĉaan (hèn, thĭi)	office
thíp thóop	Tip Top (name of a coffee shop)
thoorasàp	to telephone, a telephone
wâajnáam	to swim

MAP SHOWING SOME  
THAI PROVINCES



THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART SHOWING COMPASS POINTS



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON EIGHT

#### 8.0 BASIC DIALOG: Americans at Work in Bangkok.

- A: paj nǎj khráp                                 Where are you going?  
B: paj thamṇaan khráp                             I'm going to work.
- A: khun thamṇaan thīinǎj khráp                 Where do you work?  
B: phǒm thamṇaan thīi sathǎanthūut             I work at the American  
ameerikan khráp                                     Embassy.
- A: phŷan khǒṅ khun thamṇaan thīi             Does your friend work  
sathǎanthūut mŷankan rǎkhráp                 at the Embassy too?  
B: plàaw khráp                                     No, he doesn't.
- A: kháw thamṇaan araj khráp                     What does he do?  
B: kháw pen cǎwnâathīi juusít khráp             He's a USIS officer.
- A: thīithamṇaan khǒṅ kháw jùu                 Where's his office?  
thīinǎj khráp                                       
B: jùu thīi thanǒn sǎathoon tâj                 On South Sathorn Street.  
khráp

#### 8.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

##### a) Thai Compounds

Thai compounds like those of any other language can be explained in terms of the regular rules of syntax of the language. If asked, the native speaker can provide a derivation for any particular compound. For example, if asked to explain (provide a derivation) for the compound Parking permit, a native speaker of English would probably say 'It's a permit for parking your car', or 'It's a permit needed for parking your car', or something like that. Although there is an obvious meaning relationship between these derivations and the compound, the syntax is not the same.

The relationship between a compound and any of its derivations in Thai reveals the same kind of similarities and differences. If you do not know the meaning of a Thai compound, ask any of your instructors. They will provide you with a derivation that should make the meaning clear. If you decide to originate Thai compounds, you will find that you have only limited success. This should not inhibit you from doing this, but you should check your efforts with the native speaker before using them.

In this text compounds will be analyzed into their constituent parts and the meaning of each part will be given, and the meaning of the compound as a whole will be given. In some cases the form class of the parts will be given, thus: Noun + Noun: sathǎan 'place' + thûut 'Ambassador', This will be done to illustrate the different kinds of compounds in Thai.

1. Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

sathǎanthûut 'embassy': sathǎan 'place' + thûut 'ambassador'

câwnâathîi 'official, officer, staff member': câw 'ruler' + nâathîi 'duty'. This word is normally followed by a particular office, as in câwnâathîi tamruàt 'police official', etc.

thahǎanbòk 'soldier': thahǎan 'military person' + bòk 'earth'; rya 'boat', aakaat 'air', thus thahǎanrya 'sailor' and thahǎanaakaat 'airman'.

khâarâatchakaan 'government employee'. khâa 'servant' + râatcha- 'pertaining to the king' + kaan 'work, affairs' khâarâatchakaan thahǎan 'military government employee' khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan 'civilian government employee', krasuan taan prathêet 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs': krasuan 'ministry' + taan 'different, other' + prathêet 'country'. krasuan + kalaahôm 'defense' means 'Ministry of Defense'.

krom tamruàt 'police Department': krom 'department' (major subdivision of a ministry) + tamruàt 'police'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

kooŋ tháp bók 'The Army': kooŋ tháp 'military forces' + bók 'land'; kooŋ tháp rya 'The Navy': kooŋ tháp + rya 'boat'; kooŋ tháp akaat 'The Air Forces': kooŋ tháp + akaat 'air'.

nítsít was used originally to refer to students who lived in. Now only part of the students live at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts University, but students at those universities are still called nítsít. Students at Thammasart University are called náksýksǎa. Other students are called nákrián.

chaawnaa 'rice farmer'; chaawsǎan 'gardener, orchardist', or 'person who works on a rubber plantation'; chaawráj 'an upland farmer who grows crops like tobacco, tapioca, corn, etc. phôokháa 'merchant'; phôo 'male engaged in' + kháa 'trade'. roonphajabaan 'hospital': roon 'building' + phajabaan 'to nurse'.

naanphajabaan 'female nurse': naan 'woman' + phajabaan

### 2. Noun Compound: Noun + Verb

phûuchíawchaan 'expert': phûu 'person, one who' + chíawchaan 'to be expert, experienced.'

náksýksǎa 'student (in college or university): nák- 'one who (agent noun) + sýksǎa 'to study'

phûu occurs before a large number of verbs to form agent noun compounds (like -er in English farmer). It rarely occurs alone.

nák- 'expert, authority' occurs before a limited number of verbs to form agent nouns. It can not occur alone. Other examples are nákkhǎn 'author', nákdontrií 'musician', etc.

- b) Noun compounds (like those just described) take the same position as single nouns in compounds, for example:

câwnâathíi tamruat khon níi 'This police official'

náksýksǎa sìi khon nán 'Those 4 students'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) jùu 'to be located at, live at' is normally followed by place expressions:

juusôm jùu thîi thanôn phétburi 'USOM is on Petburi Street'.

- d) The question khun thamnaan araj 'What do you do?' can be answered in either of the following ways:

phôm pen (câwnâathîi juusít, etc.) 'I am a USIS officer, etc.'

phôm thamnaan thîi (sathăanthût ameerikan, etc.) 'I work at the American Embassy, etc.'

- e) Although both paj năj (see 7.2b) and paj thîinăj mean 'Where are (you) going?', they are used in different situations and receive different answers:

Q: paj năj 'Where are you going?'

A: paj thaan khâaw 'I'm going to eat.'

Q: ca paj thaan thîinăj 'Where are you going to eat?'

A: (thîi) ráanaahăan sôn dseŋ 'at the Red Arrow Restaurant'.

paj thîinăj is used when you wish to specify the place.

### 8.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. kháw pen khruu.         | He's a teacher.    |
| 2. kháw pen nákrían.       | He's a student.    |
| 3. kháw pen mǎo.           | He's a doctor.     |
| 4. kháw pen mĕsbăan.       | She's a housewife. |
| 5. kháw pen naanphajabaan. | She's a nurse.     |
| 6. kháw pen thahăan        | He's a             |
| { rya                      | { sailor           |
| { bók                      | { soldier.         |
| { aakàat                   | { airman           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |                           |   |
|-----|---------------------------|---|
| 7.  | kháw pen phôokháa.        | He's a merchant.                          |
| 8.  | kháw pen phûuchfawchaan.  | He's an expert<br>(or specialist).        |
| 9.  | kháw pen wítsawákoon.     | He's an engineer.                         |
| 10. | kháw pen phátthanaakoon.  | He's a community develop-<br>ment worker. |
| 11. | kháw pen khâarâatchakaan. | They're government<br>employees.          |
| 12. | kháw pen tamrùat.         | He's a policeman.                         |
| 13. | kháw pen chaawnaa.        | He's a rice farmer.                       |
| 14. | kháw pen chaawsŭan.       | He's a gardener.                          |
| 15. | kháw pen chaawrâj.        | He's a crop farmer.                       |

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	kháw pen khruu	He's a teacher.
phôm	<u>phôm</u> pen khruu	I'm a teacher.
tamrùat	phôm pen <u>tamrùat</u>	I'm a policeman.
mǔo	phôm pen <u>mǔo</u>	I'm a doctor.
thahǎan rya	phôm pen <u>thahǎan rya</u>	I'm a sailor.
phôokháa	phôm pen <u>phôokháa</u>	I'm a merchant.
kháw	<u>kháw</u> pen phôokháa	He's a merchant.
chaawnaa	kháw pen <u>chaawnaa</u>	He's a farmer.
naanphajabaan	kháw pen <u>naanphajabaan</u>	She's a nurse.
phátthanaakoon	kháw pen <u>phátthanaakoon</u>	He's a community development worker.
phôm	<u>phôm</u> pen phátthanaakoon	I'm a community development worker.
wítsawákoon	phôm pen <u>wítsawákoon</u>	I'm an engineer.
tamrùat	phôm pen <u>tamrùat</u>	I'm a policeman.
khun	<u>khun</u> pen tamrùat	You are a policeman.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kháw	<u>kháw</u> pen tamrùat	He's a policeman.
thahǎanbòk	kháw pen <u>thahǎanbòk</u>	He's a soldier.
phûuchíawchaan	kháw pen <u>phûuchíawchaan</u>	He's an expert.
khâarâat chakaan	kháw pen <u>khâarâatchakaan</u>	They are government employees.

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	khun thamñaan araj khráp	What do you do (for a living?)
kháw	<u>kháw</u> thamñaan araj khráp	What does he do?
khon níi	<u>khon níi</u> thamñaan araj khráp	What does this person do?
khon nán	<u>khon nán</u> thamñaan araj khráp	What does that person do?
khun prichaa	<u>khun prichaa</u> thamñaan araj khráp	What does Prichaa do?

### d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	khun thamñaan araj khráp
khun prichaa	<u>khun prichaa</u> thamñaan araj khráp
khun coon	<u>khun coon</u> thamñaan araj khráp
khon nán	<u>khon nán</u> thamñaan araj khráp
khon níi	<u>khon níi</u> thamñaan araj khráp
khun	<u>khun</u> thamñaan araj khráp
kháw	<u>kháw</u> thamñaan araj khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
teacher	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen khruu
nurse	khun thamñaan araj	dichán pen naanphajabaan
doctor	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen mǎo
soldier	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen thahǎan bók
engineer	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen wítsawákoon
civilian government employee	khun thamñaan araj	dichán pen khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan
rice farmer	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen chaawnaa
community develop- ment worker	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen phátthanaakoон
merchant	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen phôokháa
airman	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen thahǎan aakàat
expert	khun thamñaan araj	phǒm pen phûuchflawchaan
university student	khun thamñaan araj	dichán pen náksýksǎa

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. phǒm thamñaan thfi roonphajabaan.            | I work at the hospital.               |
| 2. phǒm thamñaan thfi roonrian.                 | I work at the school.                 |
| 3. phǒm thamñaan thfi juusít.                   | I work at USIS.                       |
| 4. phǒm thamñaan thfi juusôm.                   | I work at USOM.                       |
| 5. phǒm thamñaan thfi ee-aj-dii.                | I work at AID.                        |
| 6. phǒm thamñaan thfi cát-sa-mèek               | I work at JUSMAG.                     |
| 7. phǒm thamñaan thfi sathǎan thûut.            | I work at the Embassy.                |
| 8. phǒm thamñaan thfi krasuan tǎan<br>prathêet. | I work at the State<br>Department.    |
| 9. phǒm thamñaan thfi krasuan kalaahǒm          | I work at the Ministry<br>of Defense. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Substitution Drill

MODEL: Teacher: phǒm thamṇaan thîi roonphajabaan.  
(éf-és-áj)

Student: phǒm thamṇaan thîi éf-és-aj.

Continue substitution using the following words:

- |                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. juusít             | 4. juusōom                |
| 2. cátsamèek          | 5. sathǎanthûut ameerikan |
| 3. krasuaṇ kalaa hǒom | 6. krasuaṇ tàaṇ prathêet  |

### h) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: khun thamṇaan thîinǎj      Where do you  
work?

Student: phǒm thamṇaan thîi \_\_\_\_ (Actual place  
of work)

Continue until all students have responded.

### i) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: khun thamṇaan thîi \_\_\_\_, You work at \_\_\_\_,  
châj máj khráp      don't you?

Student: mâj châj, phǒm thamṇaan No, I don't.  
thîi \_\_\_\_ I work at \_\_\_\_.

or: khráp      Yes, I do.  
(whichever answer  
is correct.)

Continue until all students have responded at least once.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

krasuaŋ kalaahǒm	phǒm pen khruu thîi <u>krasuaŋ kalaahǒm</u>	I'm a teacher at the Ministry of Defense.
thahǎan rya	phǒm pen <u>thahǎan rya</u> thîi krasuaŋ kalaahǒm	I'm a sailor at the Ministry of Defense.
mǒɔ	phǒm pen <u>mǒɔ</u> thîi krasuaŋ kalaahǒm	I'm a doctor at the Ministry of Defense.
krasuaŋ tàanprathêet	phǒm pen mǒɔ thîi <u>krasuaŋ</u> <u>tàanprathêet</u>	I'm a doctor at the Foreign Ministry.
khâarâatchakaan	phǒm pen <u>khâarâatchakaan</u> thîi krasuaŋ tàanprathêet	I'm an employee of the Foreign Ministry.
juusít	phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan thîi <u>juusít</u>	I'm an employee of USIS
câwnâathîi	phǒm pen <u>câwnâathîi</u> thîi juusít	I'm an official of USIS.
sathǎanthûut	phǒm pen câwnâathîi thîi <u>sathǎanthûut</u>	I'm an official at the Embassy.

### m) Transformation Drill

Combine the two sentences on the left to form one sentence.

#### Sentences 1 and 2

#### Sentence 3

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. kháw pen náksỳksǎa<br>kháw rian thîi<br>mahǎawítthajaalaj thammaasàat | kháw pen náksỳksǎa thammaasàat.<br>'He's a student at Thammasart.      |
| 2. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br>kháw thammaan thîi<br>sathǎanthûut        | kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br>sathǎanthûut<br>'He's an Embassy employee. |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>3. phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>phǒm thamnaan thîi<br/>krasuanj tãanprathêet</p> | <p>phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>krasuanj tãanprathêet<br/>I'm an employee of the<br/>Foreign Ministry</p> |
| <p>4. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>kháw thamnaan thîi<br/>krasuanj mahàatthaj</p>   | <p>kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>krasuanj mahàatthaj<br/>He's an employee of the<br/>Interior Ministry</p> |
| <p>5. kháw pen nákrían<br/>kháw rian thîi roonrianníi</p>                           | <p>kháw pen nákrían roonrianníi<br/>He's a student of this<br/>school.</p>                                |
| <p>6. kháw pen nítsít<br/>kháw rian thîi culaa</p>                                  | <p>kháw pen nítsít culaa<br/>He's a Chula student.</p>  |

n) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

kháw maa càak juusít  
kháw maa càak cátsamèek  
khon nán maa càak krasuanj  
tãanprathêet  
phátthanaakoon khon nán maa  
càak krasuanj mahàatthaj  
phǒm maa càak sathãanthûut  
ameerikan  
phûuchiâwchaan khon nán maa  
càak juusôm

Pattern 2

kháw pen câwnâathîi juusít  
kháw pen câwnâathîi cátsamèek  
khon nán pen câwnâathîi krasuanj  
tãanprathêet  
phátthanaakoon khon nán pen  
câwnâathîi krasuanj mahàatthaj  
phǒm pen câwnâathîi sathãanthûut  
ameerikan  
phûuthîawchaan khon nán pen  
câwnâathîi juusôm

thahǎan khon nán maa càak  
kooṅthápbòk ameerikan

thahǎan khon nán pen cǎwnâathîi  
kooṅthápbòk ameerikan

phûuchaaṅ khon nán maa càak  
krom tamrùat

phûuchaaṅ khon nán pen  
cǎwnâathîi tamrùat

o) Transformation Drill (Combine Sentences 1 and 2 into 3)

1. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan  
phonlaryan

kháw pen khâarâatchakaan  
phonlaryan jùu thîi  
krasuaṅ kalaahǒm

kháw jùu thîi krasuaṅ  
kalaahǒm

2. kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj

kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj  
jùu thîi éf és aj

kháw jùu thîi éf és aj

3. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan  
thahǎan

kháw pen khâarâatchakaan  
thahǎan jùu thîi pentakoon

kháw jùu thîi pentaakoon

4. kháw pen mǒothahǎan

kháw pen mǒothahǎan jùu  
thîi roonphajabaan nán

kháw jùu thîi roonphajabaan  
nán

5. kháw pen phûuchíawchaan  
thaaṅ kasèt

kháw pen phûuchíawchaan thaaṅ  
kasèt jùu thîi juusǒm

kháw jùu thîi juusǒm

6. kháw pen cǎwnâathîi tamrùat

kháw pen cǎwnâathîi tamrùat  
jùu thîi (caṅwàt) udoon

kháw jùu thîi (caṅwàt) udoon

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathǎaniirótfaj jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi  
The train station is on Rama 4 Street.
2. hǎalamphooŋ jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi  
Hualamphong is on Rama 4 Street.
3. sathǎaniirótfaj hǎalamphooŋ jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi  
Hualamphong station is on Rama 4 Street.
4. sathǎanthûut jùu thǎi thanǎn wítthajú  
The Embassy is on Wireless Road.
5. sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn wítthajú  
The American Embassy is on Wireless Road.
6. sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn phát phoŋ  
The USIS auditorium is on Pat Pong Street.
7. juusôm jùu thǎi thanǎn phétburii  
USOM is on Petburi Street.
8. juusít jùu thǎi thanǎn sǎathoon tâj  
USIS is on South Sathorn Street.
9. cáat-sa-mèek jùu thǎi thanǎn sǎathoon tâj  
JUSMAG is on South Sathorn Street.
10. thanaakhaan ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn suriwon  
The Bank of America is on Suriwong Street.
11. phii-éks jùu thǎi khlooŋ tœj  
The PX is at Klong Toei.
12. sapòot khláp jùu thǎi thanǎn sanǎam máa  
The Sports Club is on Race Track Road.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

13. prajsanii klaaŋ jùu thŋi thanŋn careen kruŋ  
The Main Post Office is on Charoen Krung Street.

q) Substitution Drill

Cue

	<u>juusŋom</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is USOM?
juusít	<u>juusít</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is USIS?
sathǎanii rótfaj hŋalamphoon	<u>sathǎanii rótfaj hŋalamphoon</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is Hualampong Railroad Station?
sathǎanthûut ameerikan	<u>sathǎanthûut ameerikan</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is the American Embassy?
thanaakhaan thaj	<u>thanaakhaan thaj</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is the Thai Bank?
sapòot khláp	<u>sapòot khláp</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is the Sports Club?
cátsamèsk	<u>cátsamèsk</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is JUSMAG?
roonrɛɛm eerawan	<u>roonrɛɛm eerawan</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is the Erawan Hotel?
sǎalaa ameerikan	<u>sǎalaa ameerikan</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is the USIS Auditorium?
juusŋom	<u>juusŋom</u> jùu thŋinǎj khráp Where is USOM?



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 8.4 VOCABULARY

ee aj dii	A.I.D. (Agency for International Development)
ee juu ee	A.U.A. (American University Association)
bòk	land (as opposed to sea)
carəən krun	Charoen Krung (name of a street in Bangkok)
cátsamèək	JUSMAG (Joint Military Assistance Group)
câw	ruler (literally 'prince')
câwnâathîi (khon)	official, officer, staff member
chaawnaa (khon)	rice farmer
chaawrâj (khon)	a crop farmer
chaawsŭan (khon)	gardener, orchardist
culaa	Chula (an abbreviation for Chulalongkorn University)
éf és aj	F.S.I. (Foreign Service Institute)
hŭalamphoon	Hualampong (name of the main train station in Bangkok)
juusít	U.S.I.S. (United States Information Service)
juusŏm	U.S.O.M. (United States Operations Mission)
kasètsàat	agriculture; also the name of the university of agriculture in Bangkok
kháa	to trade, engage in trade
khâarâatchakaan (khon)	government employee
khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan	civilian government employee
khâarâatchakaan thahăan (khon)	military government employee
khlooŋ teej	Klong Toei (Section of Bangkok)
koon	division (subdivision of a <u>krom</u> )

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

koontháp	the armed forces (of a country)
koontháp aakàat	the Air Forces
koontháp bòk	the Army
koontháp rya	the Navy
kaan	work, affairs
krasuaŋ kalaahǒm	Ministry of Defense
krasuaŋ mahàatthaj	Ministry of the Interior
krasuaŋ tàanprathêet	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
krom	department (major subdivision of a ministry)
krom tamrùat	police department
mahǎawítthajaalaj	university
mêebâan (khon)	housewife
mýankan	too, also
naaŋ (khon)	female, Mrs.
naaŋphajaabaan (khon)	female nurse
nâathîi	duty
náksýksǎa (khon)	student
nítsit (khon)	student (at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts Universities)
ŋaan	work
pentaakoön	the Pentagon
phahǒnjoothin	Phahonyothin Road (in Bangkok)
phát phoŋ	Pát Pong Street (in Bangkok)
phátthanaakoön (khon)	a community development worker
phii-éks	the PX (Post Exchange)
phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phôo (khon)	father, male engaged in...
phôo kháa	merchant
phráaathít	Pra-aathit Street (in Bangkok)
phráraam sîi	Rama the Fourth (street)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

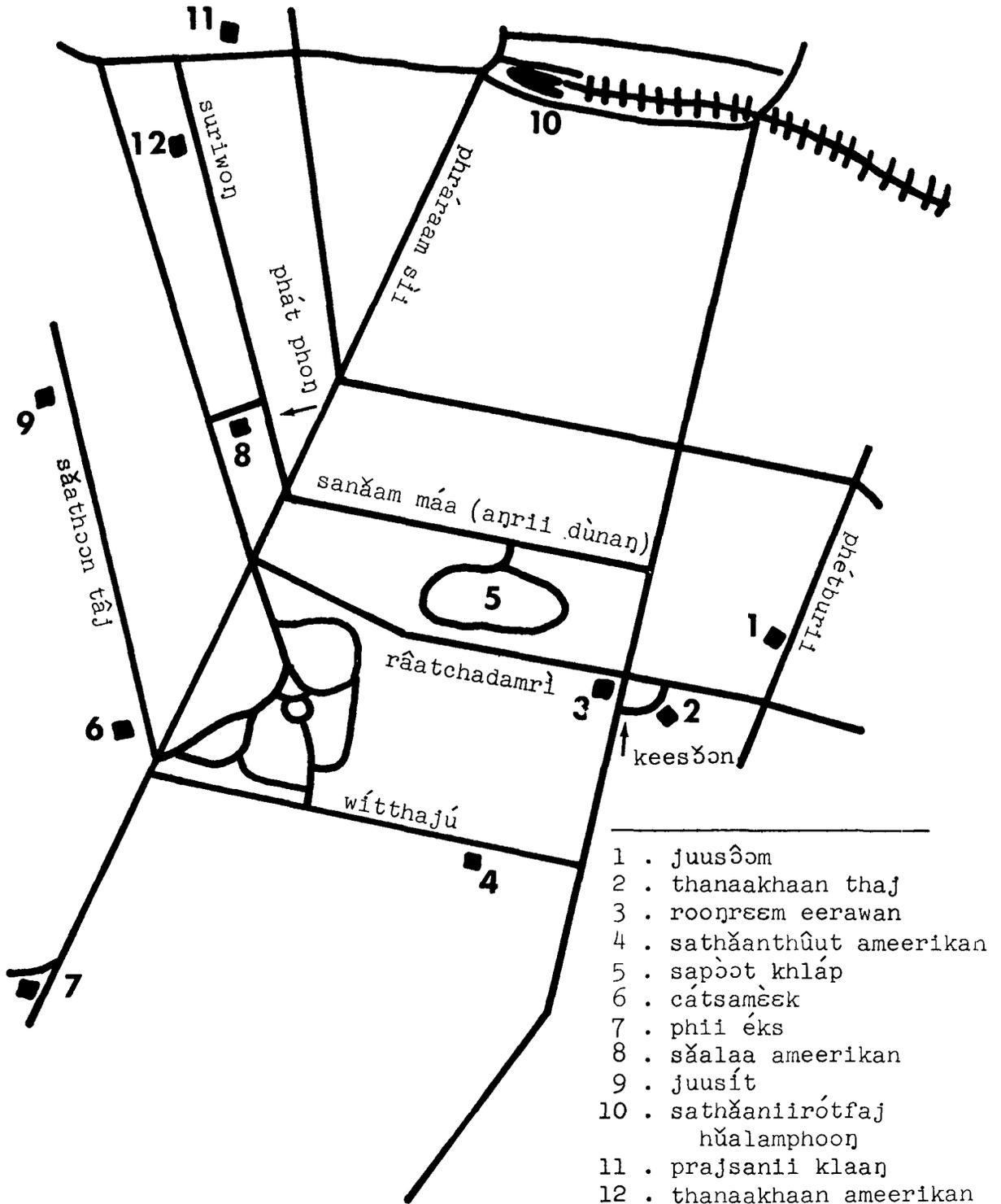
---

prajsanii klaaŋ	the main post office
phûuchflawchaan (khon)	an expert
rótfaj (khabuan)	a train
săalaa (lăŋ)	a pavilion, a hall, a public building
săalaa ameerikan	the USIS auditorium
râatchadamnœn	Rachadamnoen (Road)
râatchadamri	Rachadamri (Road)
râatchawithĭi	Rajawithee (Road)
rooŋ	building
rya (lam)	boat
sanăam máa	race track (name of a street in Bangkok)
sapòot khláp	The Royal Bangkok Sports Club
sathăan (hènŋ)	place, location
sathăanii (hènŋ)	station
sathăanii rótfaj (hènŋ)	the railroad station
săathoon tâj	South Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sĭi	four
sŏon dœŋ	Red Arrow (name of a restaurant in Bangkok)
suriwoŋ	Suriwong (street in Bangkok)
sÿksăa	to study, learn
tamruat (khon)	police
thaan kasèt	agricultural
thahăan aakàat (khon)	airman
thahăan bøk (khon)	soldier
thahăan rya (khon)	sailor
thammasàat	Thammasart (university in Bangkok)
thanaakhaan ameerikan	the Bank of America (the American bank)
thanaakhaan thaj	the Bank of Thailand
thanŏn (săaj)	street, road

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thîi nǎj	where (as question word); anywhere (in negative statement)
thîi nîi	here
thûut (khon)	the ambassador (common usage)
wítsawákoon (khon)	an engineer
wítthajú	Withayu (Thai name of a street), Wireless Road (English name)



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON NINE

#### 9.0 BASIC DIALOG: Going to Don Muang to Pick up a Friend.

- A: paj nǎj maa khráp                      Where have you been?  
B: paj duu nǎj maa                      To a movie.  
    khun kamlan ca paj nǎj              Where are you about to go to?
- A: paj doon myan                      To Don Muang (airport).  
    paj dûajkan máj                      Want to go along?  
B: mâj ahá                              No, (thanks)  
    khun ca paj thammaj                Why are you going?
- A: paj ráp phyan                      To pick up a friend.  
B: mserfi mâj jùu lǎ                    Mary isn't home?
- A: jùu                                      She is.  
B: kháv mâj dâj paj ajútthajaa lǎ    She didn't go to Ayuthaya?
- A: khráp                                That's right.  
    mâj dâj paj                              She didn't go.  
B: kháv kamlan tham araj              What's she doing?
- A: duu nǎjsǎy                          She's studying.

#### 9.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Thai verbs do not have tense, i.e. there are no changes in form that correlate with time as in English (see, saw, etc.) The time or state of an action is indicated by the use of time (ca, etc.) and aspect (kamlan, etc.) particles. The use and meaning of these particles and various words relating to time and frequency of occurrence are illustrated on the chart on the next page, which is arranged in normal sentence word order.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

Time Words	Subject	Time and aspect Particles		Verb Phrases	Freq. Word	Meaning
	(phǒm)			paj talàat		Time Unspecified(1)
	(phǒm)			paj talàat	thúk wan(2)	Repeated action
weelaa níi khanàníi (3)	(phǒm)	kamlaŋ		paj talàat		Present time action in progress
	(phǒm)	kamlaŋ	ca	paj talàat		Action imminent
	(phǒm)		ca	paj talàat		Future
dĭaw wanníi phrûŋníi(4)	(phǒm)		ca	paj talàat		Future
mýawaanníi mýa kĭníní wanníi (5)	(phǒm)			paj talàat		Past
	(phǒm)	khəej		paj talàat		Indefinite Past
	(phǒm)			paj talàat maa		Action just completed, returned to former place

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- NOTES: 1) 'Time unspecified' means only that there is no formal indication of time in the sentence.
- 2) thúk wan 'everyday'
- 3) weelaa níi 'at this time', khanà níi 'at present'
- 4) dǎaw 'soon', wanníi 'today', phrûnníi 'tomorrow'
- 5) mýawaanníi 'yesterday', mýakîiníi 'a short time ago'

- b) In questions the question word may play a role in the indication of time or of the state of the action. For example,

Future time: ca paj máj 'Will you go?'

Past time: paj rýplàaw 'Did you go?'

Habitual action: paj thúk wan rýplàaw 'Do you go everyday?'

The question word may also serve to signify the speaker's purpose in asking the question: seeking information, issuing an invitation, asking for confirmation of something he is more or less sure about, indicating surprise, etc. The chart below illustrates the meaning and use of various question words.

Sentence Type	Question Word	Meaning	Response	
			Affirm- ative	Negative
paj	máj	Invita- tion	paj	mâj { ahá lakhráp
ca paj	máj	Future	paj	{ mâj mâj paj
paj thúk wan	rýplàaw	Habitual	thúk wan	mâj thúkwan

## THAI BASIC COURSE

Sentence Type	Question Word	Meaning	Response	
			Affirm- ative	Negative
m̄yawaanníi... paj	rýplàaw	Past	paj	{ plàaw m̄aj dâj paj
kháw ca paj sýy khǒŋ m̄yawaanníi kháw paj sýy khǒŋ kháw paj sýy khǒŋ maa	châj máj	Confirm- ation of what one is very sure about	{ h̄y khráp châj	{ m̄aj châj plàaw
kháw { ca kamlan ca paj sýy khǒŋ	lǎ lǎhá	Confirm- ation of what one is less sure about	{ khráp h̄y	plàaw
kháw kamlan paj sýy khǒŋ	rýy khráp			
m̄yawaanníi kháw paj sýy khǒŋ	lǎ lǎhá	Confirm- ation of what one is less sure about	{ khráp h̄y	{ plàaw m̄aj dâj paj
kháw paj sýy khǒŋ maa	rýy khráp			

### NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

kháw ca m̄aj paj sýy khǒŋ	lǎ	Future	paj	{ h̄y, khráp m̄aj paj
khun m̄aj paj sýy khǒŋ		Intention	paj	{ h̄y, khráp m̄aj (paj)
(m̄yaaaanníi) m̄aj dâj paj sýy khǒŋ	rýy	Past	paj	{ h̄y, khráp m̄aj dâj paj

NOTE: Between intimates h̄y (pronounced with strong nasal quality) may replace khráp.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 9.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u> (Teacher)	<u>Question</u> (Student 1)	<u>Response</u> (Student 2)
thúra	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thúra maa 'Out on business.'
thĭaw ajútthajaa	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thĭaw ajútthajaa maa On excursion to Ayuthaya.
duu nǎŋ	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj duu nǎŋ maa To a movie.
thaan khâaw	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thaan khâaw maa To eat.
sýy khǒŋ	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj sýy khǒŋ maa Shopping.
hôn̄samùt	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj hôn̄samùt maa To the library.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

1. hōṅsamùt                      dǎaw (khun) ca paj hōṅsamùt máj  
Are you going to the library soon?
2. hōṅlèep                        dǎaw ca paj hōṅlèep máj  
Are you going to the laboratory soon?
3. hōṅ aahǎan                    dǎaw ca paj hōṅaahǎan máj  
Are you going to the dining room soon?
4. hōṅnám                         dǎaw ca paj hōṅnám máj  
Are you going to the toilet soon?
5. hōṅrian                         dǎaw ca paj hōṅrian máj  
Are you going to the classroom soon?
6. hōṅrian phaasǎa thaj        dǎaw ca paj hōṅrian phaasǎa thaj máj  
Are you going to the Thai classroom soon?
7. hōṅthamṅaan                 dǎaw ca paj hōṅthamṅaan máj  
Are you going to the work room soon?
8. hōṅthabian                    dǎaw ca paj hōṅthabian máj  
Are you going to the registrar's soon?
9. hōṅthoorasàp                 dǎaw ca paj hōṅthoorasàp máj  
Are you going to the telephone room soon?
10. hōṅaahǎan                    dǎaw ca paj hōṅaahǎan máj  
Are you going to the dining hall soon?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

c) Response Drill (Respond according to situation.)

MODEL: Teacher: dĭaw (khun) ca paj hōŋlèep máj  
Are you going to the laboratory soon?

Student: Affirmative: paj khráp I am.

Negative: māj paj khráp I am not.

1. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋsamùt máj  
Are you going to the library soon?
2. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋaahǎan máj  
Are you going to the dining room soon?
3. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋnám máj  
Are you going to the toilet soon?
4. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋrian máj  
Are you going to the classroom soon?
5. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋrian phaasǎa thaj máj  
Are you going to the Thai classroom soon?
6. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋthamŋaan máj  
Are you going to the work room soon?
7. dĭaw khun ca paj sathǎani rótfaj máj  
Are you going to the Railroad Station soon?
8. dĭaw khun ca paj rooŋreem raamǎa máj  
Are you going to Hotel Rama soon?
9. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋthabian máj  
Are you going to the registrar's room soon?
10. dĭaw khun ca paj sanǎambin máj  
Are you going to the Airport soon?

(Students ask each other the same questions.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

MODEL 1:            Cue: No

Question: wanníi (khun) ca paj ráanaahǎan máj

Response: mâj paj khráp

MODEL 2:            Cue: Yes.

Question: wanníi (khun) ca paj ráankhǎajkhǒŋ máj

Response: paj khráp

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	<u>Response</u>
no	wanníi ca paj ráankaafɛɛ máj	mâj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj thîithamŋaan máj	paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj talàat máj	mâj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj hǒŋlèɛp máj	paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj hǒŋsamùt máj	paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj thîaw máj	mâj paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj hǎa mǒɔ máj	mâj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj thurá máj	paj khráp
no		mâj paj khráp

### e) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	dǎaw (khun) ca paj roonŋrian máj Are you going to school soon?
prajsanii	dǎaw (khun) ca paj prajsanii máj Are you going to the post office soon?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

wanníi	wanníi ca paj prajsanii máj Are you going to the Post Office today?
sathǎanthûut	wanníi ca paj sathǎanthûut máj Are you going to the embassy today?
phrûṅníi	phrûṅníi ca paj sathǎanthûut máj Are you going to the embassy tomorrow?
juusít	phrûṅníi ca paj juusít máj Are you going to USIS tomorrow?
dǎaw	dǎaw ca paj juusít máj Are you going to USIS soon?
thanakhaan ameerikan	dǎaw ca paj thanakhaan ameerikan máj Are you going to the Bank of America soon?
phrûṅníi	phrûṅníi ca paj thanakhaan amerikan máj Are you going to the Bank of America tomorrow?

### f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. no	dǎaw mâj paj ráanaahǎan rǎkhráp Aren't you going to the restaurant soon?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.
2. yes	wanníi mâj paj hǎṅlèep rǎkhráp Aren't you going to the lab today?	paj khráp Yes, I am.
3. no	phrûṅníi mâj paj sathǎanthûut rǎkhráp Aren't you going to the embassy tomorrow?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |         |  |  |
|---------|--|--|
| 4. yes  | phrûṅṅíi mâj paj juusít rěkháp<br>Aren't you going to USIS tomorrow?                             | paj kháp<br>Yes, I am.                         |
| 5. no   | wanníi mâj paj krasuaṅtàaṅ prathêet rěkháp<br>Aren't you going to the State<br>Department today? | kháp<br>mâj (paj)<br>No, I don't<br>intend to. |
| 6. yes  | dĭaw mâj paj hōṅsamùt rěkháp<br>Aren't you going to the library soon?                            | paj kháp<br>Yes, I am.                         |
| 7. no   | dĭaw mâj paj ráanaahāan rěkháp<br>Aren't you going to the library soon?                          | kháp<br>mâj (paj)<br>No, I don't<br>intend to. |
| 8. yes  | wanníi mâj paj hōṅprachum rěkháp<br>Aren't you going to the<br>auditorium soon?                  | paj kháp<br>Yes, I am.                         |
| 9. no   | wanníi mâj paj rooṅphajaabaan rěkháp<br>Aren't you going to the hospital<br>today?               | kháp<br>mâj (paj)<br>No, I don't<br>intend to. |
| 10. yes | phrûṅṅíi mâj paj talàat rěkháp<br>Aren't you going to the market<br>tomorrow?                    | paj kháp<br>Yes, I am.                         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
thîithamṇaan	khun paj <u>thîithamṇaan</u> thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the office every day?
thanakhaan	khun paj <u>thanakhaan</u> thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the bank every day?
ránaahǎan	khun paj <u>ránaahǎan</u> thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the restaurant every day?
krasuaṇ tàaṇ prathêet	khun paj <u>krasuaṇ</u> <u>tàaṇprathêet</u> thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the State Department every day?
juusôm	khun paj <u>juusôm</u> thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to USOM every day?
juusít	khun paj <u>juusít</u> thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to USIS everyday?
bâan	khun klàp <u>bâan</u> thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go home every day?



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. no    khun paj sathǎanthûut thúk wan                    mâj thúk wan  
          rýplàaw  
          Do you go to the Embassy everyday?      No, not everyday.
9. yes    khun paj krasuan tǎanprathêet thúk                    thúk wan khráp  
          wan rýplàaw  
          Do you go to the Department of                    Yes, everyday.  
          State everyday?
10. yes    khun paj sýy kàpkhâw thúk wan rýplàaw                    thúk wan khráp  
          Do you go buy food everyday?                    Yes, everyday.
11. no    khun paj sathǎankonṣǔn thúk wan                    thúk wan khráp  
          rýplàaw  
          Do you go to the Consulate everyday.      No, not everyday.
12. yes    khun paj hōṅlèep thúk wan rýplàaw                    thúk wan khráp  
          Do you go to the laboratory                    Yes, everyday.  
          everyday?

### 1) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. khun paj krasuan tǎanprathêet  
   thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the State  
Department every day?

2. khun paj roonṛian thúk wan  
   rýplàaw

Do you go to the school  
everyday?

#### Pattern 2

- khun mâj dâj paj krasuan  
tǎan prathêet thúk wan  
rǎkhráp

Don't you go to the State  
Department everyday?

- khun mâj dâj paj roonṛian  
thúk wan rǎkhráp

Don't you go to the  
school everyday?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. khun paj lēn kóof thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go play golf<br>everyday?         | khun mâj dâj pâj lēn kóof<br>thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go play<br>golf everyday.          |
| 4. khun paj wâaj nám thúk wan<br>rěkháp<br>Do you go swimming everyday.              | khun mâj dâj paj wâaj nám<br>thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go swimming<br>everyday?           |
| 5. khun paj ráankhăajkhǒŋ thúk<br>wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the shops<br>everyday? | khun mâj dâj paj ráankhăaj<br>khǒŋ thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go to the<br>shops everyday? |
| 6. khun paj hōnlèep thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the laboratory<br>everyday?  | khun mâj dâj paj hōnlèep<br>thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go to the<br>laboratory everyday?   |
| 7. khun paj sýy kàpkhâw thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go buy food everyday?          | khun mâj dâj paj sýy<br>kàpkhâaw thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go buy food<br>everyday?       |
| 8. khun paj talàat thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the market<br>everyday?          | khun mâj pâj paj talàat<br>thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go to the<br>market everyday?        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### j) Response Drill

MODEL:            Cue: Yes<sup>1</sup>

Question:    khun mâj dâj paj            Don't you go to the  
                  sathăanthûut thúk        Embassy everyday?  
                  wan rěkhráp

Response:    paj (thúk wan) khráp    Yes, I do.

Cue: No<sup>1</sup>

Question:    khun mâj dâj paj            Don't you go to the  
                  sathăanthûut thúk        Embassy everyday?  
                  wan rěkhráp

Response:    khráp  
                  mâj dâj paj (thúk        No, I don't.  
                  wan) khráp

### Cue

### Pattern

1. yes    khun mâj dâj paj juusôm thúk wan rěkhráp
2. no     khun mâj dâj paj thîi thamŋaan thúk wan rěkhráp
3. yes    khun mâj dâj lēn thennít thúk wan rěkhráp
4. no     khun mâj dâj paj hăa mŏo thúk wan rěkhráp
5. yes    khun mâj dâj paj roonriian thúk wan rěkhráp
6. no     khun mâj dâj wâaj nám thúk wan rěkhráp
7. yes    khun mâj dâj paj sapòot khláp thúk wan rěkhráp
8. no     khun mâj dâj paj thanakhaan ameerikan thúk wan rěkhráp
9. yes    khun mâj dâj paj thurá thúk wan rěkhráp

---

<sup>1</sup>Yes indicates that the answer is in the affirmative; No, in the negative. However, since the question is in the negative, a No answer confirms the question; whereas, a Yes answer denies it.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	mýawaanníi phǒm paj sathǎanthûut Yesterday I went to the embassy.
mýakíiníi	<u>mýakíiníi</u> phǒm paj sathǎanthûut A short time ago I went to the embassy.
hǒnám	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>hǒnám</u> A short time ago I went to the toilet.
hǒnsamùt	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>hǒnsamùt</u> A short time ago I went to the library.
fan théep thîi hǒnlèep	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>fan théep thîi hǒnlèep</u> A short time ago I went to listen to tapes in the language laboratory.
thaan aahǎan	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>thaan aahǎan</u> A short time ago I went to eat.
sýy khǒn thîi talàat	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>sýy khǒn thîi talàat</u> A short time ago I went shopping at the market.
mýawaanníi	<u>mýawaanníi</u> phǒm paj sýy khǒn thîi talàat Yesterday I went shopping at the market.
prajsanii	mýawaanníi phǒm paj <u>prajsanii</u> Yesterday I went to the Post Office.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Transformation Drill (Affirmative to Negative Statements)

#### Pattern 1

m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj talàat

m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj thaan  
aahǎan th̄i roonr̄eem eerawan

m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj roonr̄ian

m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj sathǎan-  
thûut

m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj thúra  
th̄i prajsani

m̄yakíiníi phǒm paj h̄onl̄èep

#### Pattern 2

m̄yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj talàat

m̄yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj thaan  
aahǎan th̄i roonr̄eem eerawan

m̄yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj  
roonr̄ian

m̄yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj  
sathǎanthûut

m̄yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj  
thurá th̄i prajsani

m̄yakíiníi phǒm mâj dâj paj  
h̄onl̄èep

### m) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

sathǎanthûut

m̄yakíiníi<sup>1</sup>

h̄onsamùt

h̄onthoorasàp

#### Pattern

m̄yawaanníi khun paj talàat r̄yplàaw khráp

m̄yawaanníi khun paj sathǎanthûut r̄yplàaw khráp

m̄yakíiníi khun paj sathǎanthûut r̄yplàaw khráp

m̄yakíiníi khun paj h̄onsamùt r̄yplàaw khráp

m̄yakíiníi khun paj h̄on thoorasàp r̄yplàaw khráp

---

<sup>1</sup>m̄yakíiníi may be pronounced m̄yakíiníi or m̄yakíi or m̄yakíi.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

m̂yawaanníi	m̂yawaanníi khun paj hōŋ thoorasàp rýplàaw khráp
sýy khōŋ	m̂yawaanníi khun paj sýy khōŋ rýplàaw khráp
hǎa mǎo	m̂yawaanníi khun paj hǎa mǎo rýplàaw khráp
ráp phýan thîi	m̂yawaanníi khun paj ráp phýan thîi dōon myaŋ
dōon myaŋ	rýplàaw khráp

### n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
no	m̂yawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw Did you go to the market yesterday?	{ māj dāj paj plàaw khráp No, I didn't.
yes	m̂yawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw Did you go to the market yesterday?	paj khráp Yes, I did.
no	m̂yawaanníi khun paj thurá thîi thanaakhaan rýplàaw	{ māj dāj paj plàaw khráp
yes	m̂yawaanníi khun paj krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet rýplàaw	paj khráp
no	m̂yawaanníi khun paj thamŋaan rýplàaw	{ māj dāj paj plàaw khráp
yes	m̂yawaanníi khun paj àan náŋsýy thîi hōŋsamùt rýplàaw	paj khráp
no	m̂yawaanníi khun paj sōŋ cōtmǎaj rýplàaw	{ māj dāj paj plàaw khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

yes    m̂yawaanníi khun paj fan théep tĥi ĥon                    m̂aj d̂aj paj  
         lèep r̂yplàaw    paj khráp

no      m̂yawaanníi khun paj l̂en thennít tĥi                    { m̂aj d̂aj paj  
         sapòot khláp r̂yplàaw    } plàaw khráp

### o) Transformation Drill (Affirmative to Negative Question)

#### Pattern 1

m̂yawaanníi khun paj tĥaw r̂yplàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun paj roonphajaabaan  
r̂yplàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun maa rian phaasǎa  
thaj tĥi éf-és-aj r̂yplàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun paj thamnaan  
r̂yplàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun phóp kháw tĥi  
sathǎanii rótfaj r̂yplàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun paj kin aahǎan  
thaj tĥi ráanaahǎan cenníi  
r̂yplàaw

#### Pattern 2

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂aj d̂aj paj  
tĥaw r̂ekhráp

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂aj d̂aj paj  
roonphajaabaan r̂ekhráp

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂aj d̂aj maa  
rian phaasǎathaj tĥi  
éf-és-aj r̂ekhráp

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂aj d̂aj paj  
thamnaan r̂ekhráp

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂aj d̂aj phóp  
kháw tĥi sathǎanii rótfaj  
r̂ekhráp

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂aj d̂aj paj  
kin aahǎanthaj tĥi ráanaahǎan  
cenníi r̂ekhráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

m̂yawaanníi khun paj ráp pĥyan tĥi  
san̂ambin n̂echanan r̂ypl̂aaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j paj  
ráp pĥyan tĥi san̂ambin  
n̂echanan r̂khráp

m̂yawaanníi khun tham k̂p kĥaw  
tĥi b̂an r̂ypl̂aaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j tham  
k̂p kĥaw tĥi b̂an r̂khráp

Ask each student one of the affirmative questions above, and then ask him the same question in the negative (or in reverse order). His answers should be based on the facts of the situation.

p) Response Drill (Give negative responses to the questions)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j paj ajútthajaa l̂khráp Didn't you go to Ayuthaya yesterday?</p>	<p>{ khráp (m̂j d̂j paj) { m̂j d̂j paj No, I didn't.</p>
<p>2. khun m̂j d̂j paj duu n̂j l̂ Did you go to the movies?</p>	<p>{ khráp (m̂j d̂j paj) { m̂j d̂j paj No, I didn't.</p>
<p>3. d̂law khun ca paj ĥnsamùt m̂j Are you going to the library soon?</p>	<p>{ m̂j { m̂j paj No, I'm not.</p>
<p>4. wanníi khun ca paj l̂n thennít m̂j Are you going to play tennis today?</p>	<p>{ m̂j { m̂j paj No, I'm not.</p>



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- r) Substitution Drill (Student 2 is to supply an 'activity' that fits the location given.)

MODEL: Cue words: wanní... prajsaní

Student 1: wanní phǒm ca paj prajsaní

Student 2: khun ca paj sǒn còtmǎaj rǎkhráp

Student 1: khráp

1. dǎaw... ráanaahǎan
2. phrûnní... roonphajabaan
3. wanní... talàat
4. mǎwawaanní... thanakhaan (thurá)
5. dǎaw... hǒnthoorasàp
6. mǎyakí... hǒnsamùt
7. wanní... sanǎambin doon myan
8. dǎaw... hǒnlèep
9. mǎwawaanní... thǎithamnaan
10. dǎaw... ráankaafæ

Note to the instructor: If the students have difficulty supplying an activity to go with drill, the instructor may suggest one.

### 9.4 EXERCISES

Find out from other students:

a. If they went to any of the following places yesterday:

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. school          | 4. market       |
| 2. post office     | 5. work         |
| 3. Bank of America | 6. a restaurant |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) Where they will go tomorrow.
- c) Where they did any of the following things:
- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. went to work           | 4. went to mail a letter |
| 2. went shopping          | 5. went for a walk       |
| 3. went to see the doctor | 6. played tennis         |
- d) If they went to the following places a short time ago.
- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. laboratory | 5. a restaurant |
| 2. library    | 6. to work      |
| 3. home       | 7. Boston       |
| 4. school     |                 |
- e) Who did any of the following things a short time ago.
- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. go to the bank     | 6. cook food         |
| 2. play golf          | 7. do some typing    |
| 3. go home            | 8. read a book       |
| 4. go to the hospital | 9. make a phone call |
| 5. repair a car       |                      |
- f) What they do everyday.
- g) If they didn't do any of the following things yesterday:
- |                  |                             |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. drink coffee  | 6. go to the Registrar's    |
| 2. eat food      | 7. study (at home)          |
| 3. go shopping   | 8. speak English            |
| 4. go to the lab | 9. went to pick up a friend |
| 5. speak Thai    | 10. work                    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

h) If they will do any of the following things today:

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. go to the doctor's | 6. go to work        |
| 2. play music         | 7. go home           |
| 3. teach              | 8. go to the library |
| 4. go on business     | 9. swim              |
| 5. write a book       | 10. eat              |

### 9.5 VOCABULARY

bin	to fly
ca	will, shall (future particle)
cennîi	Jenny (name)
dǎaw	soon
doon myaŋ	Don Muang (The name of the main commercial airport in Bangkok)
faŋ	to listen
hôn (hôn)	room
hôn aahǎan (hôn)	dining room, dining hall
hôn lèep (hôn)	laboratory (English loan 'lab')
hôn nám (hôn)	toilet
hôn prachum (hôn)	auditorium
hôn samùt (hôn)	library
hôn thabian (hôn)	registrar's (office)
hôn thamnaan (hôn)	work room
hôn thoorasàp (hôn)	telephone room
kamlaŋ	aspect particle indicating action in process
kàp, ka-	with
khǎaj	to sell

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

koŋsŭn (khon)	the Consul
kóof	golf
lèep (hôn)	lab (English loan)
m̄ya kíi níi, m̄yákíi, m̄yákîi	a short time ago
m̄yawaanníi	yesterday
phrûnníi	tomorrow
ráan kaafæe (ráan)	coffee shop
ráp	to receive, accept
(paj / maa) ráp	to go meet someone, to go get something
samǎe	always, regularly, consistently
sanǎam (hèn)	field (as in airfield, sports field, etc.)
sanǎam bin (hèn)	airport
sathǎan koŋsŭn (hèn)	the Consulate
sòn	to send or ship something; to see someone off, to take someone somewhere
tèe	but
thammaj	why (question word)
théep	tape (English loan word)
thúk	every, each
wanníi	today

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON TEN

### (REVIEW)

#### 10.0 BASIC EPISODE:

khun cɔɔn naamsakun samít pen khon amerikan. kháw thamɲaan thîi sathǎanthûut amerikan. bâan khɔɔn kháw jùu thîi thanǎn wítthajú. bâan khɔɔn kháw jàj lé sabaaj.

khun cɔɔn maa càak myaɲ denwêe rát khoolooradô. phanrajaa khɔɔn kháw chýy maaria, maa càak myaɲ sapriɲfil rát wæecinia. phanrajaa khun cɔɔn sǎaj mâak.

khun cɔɔn phûut phaasǎa thaj kèn mâak. kháw khœj rian phaasǎa thaj thîi rooɲrian sɔɔn phaasǎa khɔɔn krasuaɲ tǎanprathêet. kháw àan phaasǎa thaj dâj dii tè kháw khǎan mâj pen. kháw chɔɔp phûut phaasǎa thaj kàp khon thaj samœe. phanrajaa khɔɔn kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj dii mýankan. kháw mâj khœj rian phaasǎa thaj thîi rooɲrian. kháw rian càak khon thaj naj talàat, ráankhǎajkhɔɔn lé taam thanǎn.

#### 10.1 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE

1. khun cɔɔn naamsakun araj
2. kháw pen khon chǎat araj
3. kháw thamɲaan thîinǎj
4. bâan khɔɔn kháw jùu thîinǎj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. khun cɔɔn maa càak rát araj, myaŋ araj
6. phanrajaa khɔɔŋ kháw chýy araj
7. phanrajaa khɔɔŋ kháw maa càak nǎj
8. khun cɔɔn phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
9. kháw àan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
10. kháw khŷan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
11. phanrajaa khɔɔŋ kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
12. kháw khəej rian thŷi rooŋrian máj
13. kháw rian phaasǎa thaj càak khraj

### 10.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS<sup>1</sup>

#### a) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: mi burii máj khráp  
Do you have a cigarette?

Student: Affirmative: mi khráp                      Yes, I do.

Negative: mâj mi khráp                      No, I don't.

<u>Cue words</u> :	dinsɔɔ	nǎŋsýy	phěsenthŷi
	kâwŷi	nǎŋsýyphim	rûup
	kradàat	ŋəen	samùt
	faj	pàakkaa	tó
	naalikaa	phŷan	khruu

Repeat the above drill using negative questions.

(mâj mi burii rýkhráp).

---

<sup>1</sup>The purpose of drills a through o is to improve fluency; therefore, they should be done rapidly, so that the student will learn to respond automatically.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Response Drill (Perform as in Drill a)

MODEL: Teacher: phěnthfi dii máj

Is the map good?

Student: Affirmative: dii khráp      Yes, it is.

Negative: mâj dii khráp      No, it isn't.

Cue words: nánsŷy      dīnsǒ  
kháw      naalikaa  
roonrian      samùt  
khruu      aakàat  
pàakkaa      kradàat

Repeat this drill using negative questions.

### c) Response Drill (As in Drill a)

MODEL: Teacher: aakàat dii máj

Is the weather good?

Student: Affirmative: dii khráp      Yes, it is.

Negative: mâj dii khráp      No, it isn't.

Cue words: nǎaw      dii  
khun      aahǎan  
sǎaj      rón  
rûup      kháw  
pàakkaa      dii

Repeat the drill using negative questions.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nánŝy lêm nǎj dii	lêm nán
2. kâwîi tua nǎj dii	tua nán
3. phûuchaaĵ khon nǎj phûut phaasǎa thai kèn	khon nán
4. nanphajabaan khon nǎj sǎaj	khon nán
5. dínŝo thên nǎj dii	thên nán
6. tó tua nǎj sǎaj	tua nán
7. câw nâathîi khon nǎj nǎaw	khon nán
8. rûup baj nǎj sǎaj	baj nán
9. phěnthîi phèn nǎj dii	phèn nán
10. khruu khon nǎj chýy coon	khon nán

Repeat this drill using nîi for nán in the responses.

### e) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun khœĵ pen thahǎan máĵ	khœĵ khráp
2. khun khœĵ paj parîit máĵ	khœĵ khráp
3. khun khœĵ paj thîaw kruĵ room máĵ	khœĵ khráp
4. khun khœĵ thamnaan thîi juusít máĵ	khœĵ khráp
5. khun khœĵ rian phaasǎa phamâa máĵ	khœĵ khráp
6. khun khœĵ jùu tàan prathêet máĵ	khœĵ khráp
7. khun khœĵ kin aahǎan thaj máĵ	khœĵ khráp
8. khun khœĵ pen nítŝit culaa máĵ	khœĵ khráp
9. khun khœĵ sŝon nánŝy máĵ	khœĵ khráp
10. khun khœĵ miî rôt faràn máĵ	khœĵ khráp

Repeat the above drill with negative responses: (mâĵ khœĵ).

Repeat the above drill using negative questions.

f) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun khàp rít pen máj	pen khráp
2. khun tham kàp khâaw pen máj	pen khráp
3. khun lên dontrií pen máj	pen khráp
4. khun wâaj nám pen máj	pen khráp
5. khun phím nánsŷy pen máj	pen khráp
6. khun àan nánsŷy thaj pen máj	pen khráp
7. khun phûut phaasăa juan pen máj	pen khráp

Repeat the drill with negative responses: (mâj pen).

g) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting dâj for pen in questions and responses).

h) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting kèn for pen in questions and responses.)

NOTE: In Drills f, g, and h, the questions may be asked in the negative, as in the following examples:

From drill f: khun khàp rít mâj pen rěkhráp

From drill g: khun khàp rít mâj dâj rěkhráp

From drill h: khun khàp rít mâj kèn rěkhráp

i) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting dâj dii for pen in the questions and dii for pen in answers.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

j) Response Drill (Give a negative response to each question).

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. m̂yawaanníi paj thanaakhan rýplàaw Did you go to the bank yesterday?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
2. m̂yawaanníi paj duu nǎj rýplàaw Did you go to the movies yesterday?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
3. m̂yakíiníi paj thaan kaafɛɛ rýplàaw Did you go drink coffee a short time ago?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
4. m̂yakhyynníi duu thii wii rýplàaw Did you watch TV last night?	mâj dâj duu No, I didn't.
5. m̂yacháawníi maa roonriian rýplàaw Did you come to school this morning?	mâj dâj maa No, I didn't.
6. m̂yawaanníi paj wâaj nám rýplàaw Did you go swimming yesterday?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.

k) Response Drill (Respond negatively to the questions.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw jùu máj Is he in?	mâj jùu No, he isn't.
2. khruu jùu máj Is the teacher in?	mâj jùu No, she isn't.
3. phanrajaa khun jùu máj Is your wife in?	mâj jùu No, she isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 4. mǎo jùu máj<br>Is the doctor in?                    | mâj jùu<br>No, he isn't.  |
| 5. nǎoŋsǎaw khun jùu máj<br>Is your younger sister in? | mâj jùu<br>No, she isn't. |

Respond affirmatively to the questions above.

1) Response Drill (Respond negatively to these questions.)<sup>1</sup>

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. roonriian nán jùu nâj krunthêep rýplàaw Is that school in Bangkok?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.
2. udoon jùu pháak isǎan rýplàaw Is Udorn in N.E. Thailand?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.
3. sathǎan koŋsǔn thaj jùu thǐi myaŋ njuu jók rýplàaw Is the Thai consulate in New York city?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.
4. juusôm jùu thanŋn sǐilom rýplàaw Is USOM on Silom Street?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.
5. bâan khun jùu thanŋn sǎathoon rýplàaw Is your house on Sathorn Street?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.

NOTE: Respond affirmatively to the questions above.

---

<sup>1</sup>In drill K the subject of the sentence is an animate noun; in drill L it is an inanimate noun. Observe the contrast in usage:

Drill K: Question: ...jùu máj Answer: mâj jùu

Drill L: Question: ...jùu... rýplàaw Answer: mâj dâj jùu

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

m) Response Drill (Respond affirmatively to the invitations.)

<u>Invitation</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. paj kin khâaw dûajkan máj Shall we go eat together?	paj khráp Yes, let's.
2. paj thîaw myaŋ thaj dûajkan máj Shall we take a pleasure trip to Thailand?	paj khráp Yes, let's do that.
3. paj duu nǎŋ dûajkan máj Shall we go to a movie?	paj khráp Yes, let's go.
4. paj sýy khǒŋ dûajkan máj Shall we go shopping?	paj khráp Yes, let's.
5. paj ráp phýan thîi sathǎanii rótfaj dûajkan máj Shall we go pick up (our) friend at the train station?	paj khráp Yes, let's go.

(Respond negatively to the above invitations (mâj paj).

n) Response Drill (Give negative responses to the questions.)

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw ca paj sýy khǒŋ lǎ Is he going shopping?	plàaw khráp No, he isn't.
2. kháw ca paj thîaw lǎ Is he going out?	plàaw khráp No, he isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 3. khun ca tham aahǎan lǎ<br>Are you going to cook?                    | plàaw khráp<br>No, I'm not.   |
| 4. khun ca khǎan còtmǎj lǎ<br>Are you going to write a letter?         | plàaw khráp<br>No, I'm not.   |
| 5. phanrajaa khun ca paj wiatnaam lǎ<br>Is your wife going to Vietnam? | plàaw khráp<br>No, she isn't. |

Give affirmative answers (khráp) to the above questions.

o) Response Drill (Give affirmative answers.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun kamlaŋ ca paj sýy khǒŋ rýkhráp Are you on the point of going shopping?	khráp Yes, I am.
2. phanrajaa khun kamlaŋ ca paj duu nǎŋ rýkhráp Is your wife just about ready to go to a movie?	khráp Yes, she is.
3. khun kamlaŋ ca sǒŋ nánsýy rýkhráp Are you about to begin teaching?	khráp Yes, I am.
4. lûuk khun kamlaŋ ca paj roŋrian rýkhráp Are your children just about to leave for school?	khráp Yes, they are.
5. khruu kamlaŋ ca paj hǒŋ lèep rýkhráp Is the teacher on the point of going to the language lab?	khráp Yes, he is.

Respond negatively to the above questions.

p) Sentence Combination Drill

Using tèe 'but' as a linking word combine the two sentences to form a new one, as in the example below:

Sentence 1: kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj pen  
He can speak Thai.

Sentence 2: kháw khǎan (phaasǎa thaj) mâj pen  
He can't write Thai.

New Sentence: kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj pen tèe khǎan mâj pen  
He can speak Thai, but (he) can't write it.

Sentences 1 and 2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. kháw pen khondi<br>kháw pen khon mâj sǔaj               | kháw pen khondi tèe mâj sǔaj                        |
| 2. kháw pen khonsǔaj<br>kháw pen khon mâj dii              | kháw pen khonsǔaj tèe mâj dii                       |
| 3. kháw phûut kèn<br>kháw thamnaan mâj kèn                 | kháw phûut kèn tèe thamnaan<br>mâj kèn              |
| 4. kháw pen khonthaj<br>kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj<br>mâj pen | kháw pen khonthaj tèe phûut<br>phaasǎa thaj mâj pen |
| 5. kháw nǎaw<br>phǎm rǎon                                  | kháw nǎaw tèe phǎm rǎon                             |
| 6. kháw dii<br>phanrajaa kháw mâj dii                      | kháw dii tèe phanrajaa kháw<br>mâj dii              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. phǒm phûut wâa 'chûaj sòn  
nânsÿy nòoj'  
kháw sòn pàakkaa                      phǒm phûut wâa 'chûaj sòn  
nânsÿy nòoj' tès kháw  
sòn pàakkaa
8. naanphajabaan jùu                      naanphajabaan jùu tès mǎo  
mǎo mâj jùu                              mâj jùu
9. phǒm tham aahǎan farànsèet dâj      phǒm tham aahǎan farànsèet  
phǒm tham aahǎan farànsèet              dâj tès mâj kèn  
mâj kèn
10. kháw lèn thennít dâj                      kháw lèn thennít dâj tès  
kháw lèn thennít mâj kèn                      mâj kèn

### 10.3 EXERCISE

- a) Have each student tell his own life story in the manner of the Basic Episode (10.0).
- b) When student A has finished his short biography, student B will ask student C questions about it. This procedure should continue until each student has taken all three roles.

### 10.4 VOCABULARY

àan	to read
chôop	to like, be fond of
khoolooradôo	Colorado
saprinfil	Springfield
taam	along, after; to follow
wæcinia	Virginia

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON ELEVEN

### 11.0 BASIC DIALOG: At the Language School

- A: thîi roonrian sŏon phaasăa  
thîi khun rian mii khonthaj  
lăaj khon mǎj
- B: lăaj khon
- A: mii năkrian phaasăa thaj thăwraj
- B: mǎj sâap khráp
- A: naj chán khun mii năkrian  
kîi khon
- B: hăa khon khráp
- A: khun rian araj kan bân
- B: àan, phûut, khĭan lé plĕe
- A: khăw sŏon phaasăa araj bân
- B: lăaj phaasăa khráp. mii phaasăa  
juan, laaw, farànsèet, sapeen,  
lé phaasăa òyn òyn
- A: mii khruu chăat tàan tàan  
(thánmòt) thăwraj khráp
- B: lăaj sĭp khon khráp
- At the language school  
where you studied are  
there many Thais?
- Yes, many.
- How many Thai language  
students are there?
- I don't know.
- How many students are  
there in your class?
- Five.
- What (things) are you  
studying?
- Reading, speaking,  
writing, and translating.
- What languages do they  
teach?
- Many languages. Viet-  
namese, Lao, French,  
Spanish, and other  
languages.
- Altogether how many  
teachers of different  
nationalities are there?
- Several tens (less than  
a hundred).

## THAI BASIC COURSE

### 11.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) kan 'each other, mutually, as a group' can be used
1. As a pluralizer of the subject of the sentence:  
pít pratuu kan 'you (plural) shut the door' or
  2. to indicate that two or more persons or things are mutually involved in some activity or are related in some other way.

A:	khruu		phûut phaasăa thaj	kàp nákrian
B:		nákrian	phûut phaasăa thaj	kàp khruu
A + B:	khruu	{ lĕ kàp	nákrian	phûut phaasăa thaj <u>kan</u>
A:	'The teacher speaks Thai with the student'.			
B:	'The student speaks Thai with the teacher'.			
A + B:	'The teacher and student speak Thai with each other'.			

- b) araj, khraj, and năj all have interrogative and indefinite meaning (neither singular or plural). When used in negative sentences the meaning is indefinite:

phǒm māj dāj duu araj

'I didn't see anything.'

māj mi khraj sâap

(There is no one that knows.)

'No one knows.'

khun māj dāj paj năj rě

'Didn't you go anywhere?'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

araj, khraj, and nǎj can be made plural by the addition of bâaŋ. (Here they have interrogative meaning.)

mii nánsǎy <u>araj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u>	'What books are there?'
khun ca paj <u>nǎj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u>	'What places are you going to?'
khun phûut phaasǎa thaj <u>kàp</u> <u>khraj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u>	'Who all do you speak Thai with with?'

- c) Numerals<sup>1</sup> include all of the cardinal numbers plus some other quantity words. Numerals occur in constructions before classifiers. Some of the quantity words are lǎaj 'many, several', baaŋ 'some', kǐi 'how many?', thúk 'each, every', nóoj 'few', and mâj-kǐi 'not many'.

khruu lǎaj khon	'several teachers'
nánsǎy baaŋ lêm	'some books'
tó kǐi tua	'how many books?'
dínsǎo mâj-kǐi thêŋ	'not many pencils'
nákrian nóoj khon	'few students'

The Thai numerical system is a decimal system, and with a few exceptions compound numbers are made by multiplying by and / or adding to the numbers from 1 to 10.

The numbers from 1 to 10 are: nỳn '1', sǎoŋ '2', sǎam '3', sìi '4', hâa '5', hòk '6', cèt '7', pèet '8', kâaw '9', sìp '10'.

Multiples of ten (except 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten, thus 30 is sǎam sìp (3 x 10),

---

<sup>1</sup>For a full treatment of numerals, see Noss, 109 ff.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

70 is cèt sĭp (7 x 10), etc. Numbers to be added to 10 or multiples of 10 occur afterwards, thus 13 is sĭp sǎam (1 x 10 + 3), 34 is sǎam sĭp sĭi (3 x 10 + 4), etc. 20 is jĭi sĭp; 22 is jĭi sĭp sǎoŋ.

Except for the number 'one' itself, èt is used for 'one', thus 21 is jĭi sĭp èt; 51 is hâa sĭp èt, etc.

100 is nỳn rỏj or rỏj, but 101 is rỏj èt. 400 is sĭi rỏj; 423 is sĭi rỏj jĭi sĭp sǎam, etc.

1000 is nỳn phan or phan; 10,000 is nỳn mỳn or mỳn.

100,000 is nỳn sến or sến, and 1,000,000 is nỳn lán or lán.

15,000 is (nỳn) mỳn hâa phan (1 x 10,000 plus 5 x 1000). sĭp hâa phan (15 x 1,000) is not acceptable.

450,000 is sĭi sến hâa mỳn (4 x 100,000 plus 5 x 10,000), sĭi rỏj hâa sĭp phan (450 x 1,000) is not acceptable.

- d) One sentence may be included in another and serve as a modifier or specifier of some part of that sentence. thĭi may serve as a connector between the main sentence and the included sentence.

Main sentence:	nán̄sỹy		dii
Included sentence:		kháw khĭan	
Resultant sentence:	nán̄sỹy thĭi	kháw khĭan	dii

'The books he writes are good.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thîi kháw khǎan serves as a modifier of nánsǎy. A response to the question nánsǎy araj dii 'what books are good?' could be nánsǎy thîi kháw khǎan 'the books he writes'.

Main sentence:	nánsǎy lêm nán		dii
Included sentence:		kháw khǎan	
Resultant sentence:	nánsǎy lêm thîi	kháw khǎan	dii

'The book he wrote is good'.

thîi kháw khǎan serves as a specifier of (nánsǎy) lêm. A response to the question nánsǎy lêm nǎj dii 'Which book is good?' could be lêm thîi kháw khǎan 'the one he wrote'.

- e) ỳyn means 'other' in the sense of a different one not an additional one of the same kind. ỳyn ỳyn means 'others'; it acts as a pluralizer after nouns.

phaasǎa ỳyn            'another (different) language'

phaasǎa ỳyn ỳyn      'other (different) languages'

.... lé ỳyn ỳyn      (lit. 'and others') 'et cetera'

### 11.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. kháw phûut phaasǎathaj kàp phǎm<br>phǎm phûut phaasǎathaj kàp kháw<br>raw phûut phaasǎathaj <u>kan</u> | He speaks Thai with me.<br>I speak Thai with him.<br>We speak Thai <u>together</u> . |
| 2. kháw rúucàk khon nán<br>khon nán rúucàk kháw<br>kháw rúucàk <u>kan</u>                                 | He knows that person.<br>That person knows him.<br>They know <u>each other</u> .     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 3. phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj        | I study Thai.              |
| phŷan phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj     | My friend studies Thai.    |
| raw rian phaasǎa thaj <u>kan</u> | We <u>both</u> study Thai. |

### b) Combination Drill

#### Patterns 1 and 2

1. phǒm phŷut phaasǎa aᅇkrìt kàp kháw }  
kháw phŷut phaasǎa aᅇkrìt kàp phǒm }
2. khruu phŷut phaasǎa thaj kàp nákrìan }  
nakrìan phŷut phaasǎa thaj kàp khruu }
3. khun cǒon phŷut phaasǎa jǽraman }  
khun cim phŷut phaasǎa jǽraman }
4. phŷan phǒm rúucàk khun }  
khun rúucàk phŷan phǒm }
5. khun mserŋi paj talàat kàp khun ceennŋi }  
khun ceennŋi paj talàat kàp khun mserŋi }
6. khun cǒon paj roonrìan }  
khun cim paj roonrìan }

#### Pattern 3

- raw phŷut phaasǎa  
aᅇkrìt kan
- khruu lé nákrìan phŷut  
phaasǎa thaj kan
- khun cǒon lé khun  
cim phŷut phaasǎa  
jǽraman kan
- khun kàp phŷan phǒm  
rúucàk kan
- khun mserŋi lé khun  
ceennŋi paj talàat  
kan
- khun cǒon kàp khun  
cim paj roonrìan  
kan

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. khon nán phûut phaasăa araj<br>dâj bâaŋ<br>kháw phûut phaasăa aŋkrít,<br>farànsèet, lé thaj                                    | What languages does<br>that person speak?<br><br>He speaks English,<br>French, and Thai.   |
| 2. khon nán phûut phaasăa araj<br><br>kháw phûut phaasăa thaj   | What language does<br>that person speak?<br><br>He speaks Thai.  |
| 3. thîinîi mii khraj<br>thîinîi mii nákrían   | Who is here?<br>There are students here.   |
| 4. thîinîi mii khraj bâaŋ<br>thîinîi mii khruu, nákrían lé<br>nákphaasăa  | Who is here?<br>There are teachers,<br>students, and linguists.  |
| 5. naj eesia mii prathêet araj bâaŋ<br><br>naj eesia mii prathêet india, ciin,<br>jîipùn, thaj lé prathêet òyn òyn                | What are some of the<br>countries in Asia?<br><br>In Asia there are India,<br>China, Japan, Thailand,<br>and other countries.        |
| 6. naj júróop mii prathêet araj bâaŋ<br><br>naj júróop mii prathêet farànsèet,<br>sapeen, italîi, jæraman, lé<br>prathêet òyn òyn | What are some of the<br>countries in Europe?<br><br>In Europe there are<br>France, Spain, Italy,<br>Germany, and other<br>countries. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. naj ameerikaa mii rát araj bâaŋ  
naj ameerikaa mii rát njuu jóok,  
mesachusèt, michiksen, khelifoonia,  
lé rát ỳn ỳn.
- What are some of the states in America?  
In America there are the states of New York, Massachusetts, Michigan, California, and other states.
8. th̄i sàhàprachaachâat mii khon  
châat araj bâaŋ  
th̄i sàhàprachaachâat mii khon aŋkrít  
faràŋseèt, khon eesia lé châat ỳn  
ỳn
- What are some of the nationalities in the U.N.?  
In the U.N. there are Englishmen, Frenchmen, Asians, and other nationalities.
9. khun tham araj pen bâaŋ  
phǒm khĩan lé phũut phaasǎa  
aŋkrít pen
- What do you know how to do?  
I can write and speak English.
10. kháw tham araj pen baãŋ  
kháw tham aahãan lé líaŋ dèk pen
- What does she know how to do?  
She can cook and take care of children.
11. kháw kèn araj baãŋ  
kháw rian náŋsǎy kèn, lèn kiilaa  
kèn lé thamŋaan kèn
- What things is he good at?  
He's a good student, a good athlete, and a good worker.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
an̄krìt	kháw phûut phaasǎa araj What language does he speak?	kháw phûut phaasǎa an̄krìt He speaks English.
thaj lé an̄krìt	kháw phûut phaasǎa araj bâaŋ What languages does he speak?	kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj lé an̄krìt He speaks Thai and English.
nákrian	naj hôŋnán mii khraj Who's in that room?	mii nákrian Students.
khruu lé nákrian	naj hôŋnán mii khraj bâaŋ Who is in that room?	mii khruu lé nákrian . Teachers and students.
lǎaj châat	thîi sahàprachaachâat mii khon châat araj bâaŋ What nationalities are there at the U.N.?	mii khon châat lǎaj châat There are many.
thîithamŋaan	wanníi khun ca paj nǎj Where are you going today?	paj thîithamŋaan To the office.
talàat, prajsanii	wanníi khun ca paj nǎj bâaŋ Where (all) are you going today?	paj talàat lé prajsanii To the market and the Post Office.
khelifoonia, njuujóok, floridâa	naj ameerikaa mii rát araj bâaŋ What are some of the states in America?	mii rát khelifoonia njuujóok lé floridâa California, New York and Florida

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<p>thaj, ciin, jġipùn, lé prathêet ỳyn ỳyn</p>	<p>naj eesia mii prathêet araj bâan</p> <p>What are some of the countries in Asia?</p>	<p>mii prathêet thaj, ciin, jġipùn, lé prathêet ỳyn ỳyn</p> <p>Thailand, China, Japan, etc.</p>
<p>phránakhoon, ubon, chianmaj</p>	<p>myan thaj mii canwàt araj bâan</p> <p>What are some of the provinces in Thailand?</p>	<p>mii canwàt phránakhoon, ubon, lé chianmaj</p> <p>Phranakorn, Ubol, and Chiangmai.</p>
<p>chianmaj, ùttaradit</p>	<p>phâak nÿa mii canwàt araj bâan</p> <p>What are some of the provinces in Northern Thailand?</p>	<p>mii canwàt chianmaj lé ùttaradit</p> <p>Chiangmai and Uttaradit.</p>
<p>ubon lé udoon</p>	<p>phâak isăan mii canwàt araj bâan</p> <p>What are some of the provinces in N. E. Thailand?</p>	<p>mii canwàt ubon lè udoon</p> <p>Ubol and Udorn.</p>
<p>krunthêep</p>	<p>khon phâak klaan phûut phaasăa araj</p> <p>What language do Central Thai speak?</p>	<p>kháw phûut phaasăa krunthêep</p> <p>Bangkok Thai.</p>
<p>krunthêep lé pàk tâj</p>	<p>khon pàk tâj phûut phaasăa araj bâan</p> <p>What languages do Southern (Thai) people speak?</p>	<p>kháw phûut phaasăa krunthêep lè phaasăa pàk tâj</p> <p>Bangkok Thai and Southern Thai.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
nákrian	<u>nákrian</u> hâa khon	5 students
khruu	<u>khruu</u> hâa khon	5 teachers
nỳn	khruu <u>nỳn</u> khon	1 teacher
mố	<u>mố</u> nỳn khon	1 doctor
hòk	mố <u>hòk</u> khon	6 doctors
chaaw ameerikan	<u>chaaw ameerikan</u> hòk khon	6 Americans
sìp	chaaw ameerikan <u>sìp</u> khon	10 Americans
thahǎan bòk	<u>thahǎanbòk</u> sìp khon	10 soldiers
rốj	thahǎanbòk <u>rốj</u> khon	100 soldiers
khon	( <u>khon</u> ) rốj khon	100 people

### f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
lǎaj	nákrian <u>lǎaj</u> khon	many students
khruu	<u>khruu</u> lǎaj khon	many teachers
lǎaj sìp	khruu <u>lǎaj sìp</u> khon	many tens of teachers
thahǎan	<u>thahǎan</u> lǎaj sìp khon	many tens of soldiers
phátthanaakoון	<u>phátthanaakoון</u> lǎaj sìp khon	many tens of community Development workers

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

lǎaj rǒɔj	phátthanaakɔɔn <u>lǎaj</u> <u>rǒɔj</u> khon	many hundreds of Community Develop- ment workers
khâarâatchakaan thaj	<u>khâarâatchakaan thaj</u> lǎaj rǒɔj khon	many hundreds of Thai government employees
lǎaj phan	khâarâatchakaan thaj <u>lǎaj</u> <u>phan</u> khon	many thousands of Thai government employees

### g) Substitution Drill

MODEL:	A: khun sýy <u>nánsýy</u> rýkhráp	'You bought some books?'
	B: khráp	'Yes, I did.'
	A: (sýy) kii lêm khráp	'How many?'
	B: <u>hòk</u> lêm khráp	'Six.'

Pairs of students are to go through the exchange above substituting the following cue words for those underlined and making other changes where appropriate:

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. naalika, nỳn  | 5. phěnthfi, sli   |
| 2. dinsɔɔ, sǎam  | 6. nánsýyphim, hâa |
| 3. pàakkaa, sɔɔn | 7. rûup, cèt       |
| 4. kâwfi, síp    | 8. samùt, kâw      |

Repeat the drill above using khǎaj and mi for sýy .

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Substitution Drill

MODEL:	A: nákrían paj rýplàaw	'Did the students go?'
	B: paj khráp	'Yes, they did.'
	A. (paj) kii khon khráp	'How many (went)?'
	B. <u>hòk</u> khon khráp	'Six.'

Substitute the following cue words for the underlined words above:

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. khruu, 3                | 5. tamruat, 40         |
| 2. mǎo, 11                 | 6. khâarâatchakaan, 25 |
| 3. chaaw ameerikaan, 5,000 | 7. phôokháa, 100       |
| 4. thahǎanbòk, 5,000       |                        |

### i) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
khruu	<u>khruu</u> baaj khon	some teachers
jǐi-síp sǎoŋ	khruu <u>jǐi-síp sǎoŋ</u> khon	22 teachers
síp pèet	khruu <u>síp pèet</u> khon	18 teachers
sii-síp	khruu <u>sii-síp</u> khon	40 teachers
hòk-síp cèt	khruu <u>hòk-síp cèt</u> khon	67 teachers
sǎam róoj	khruu <u>sǎam róoj</u> khon	300 teachers
kâw-síp èt	khruu <u>kâw-síp èt</u> khon	91 teachers
sǎam-síp sii	khruu <u>sǎam-síp sii</u> khon	34 teachers
nóoj	khruu <u>nóoj</u> khon	few teachers
thúk	khruu <u>thúk</u> khon	every teacher

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. roonrian thîi khun rian mii khruu phaasăa thaj lăaj khon  
The school you're studying at has many Thai language teachers.
2. khâarâatchakaan thîi ca paj myan̄thaj tōon rian phaasăa thaj  
Government employees that are going to Thailand must study Thai.
3. nākrian thîi rian thîin̄fi pen khon ameerikan..  
Students who study here are Americans.
4. khon thîi tham rāatchakaan rīak wāa khâarâatchakaan.  
People who do government work are government employees.
5. khon thîi jūu bēan nán pen phyan phǒm  
The people who live in that house are my friends.
6. phūuj̄n̄ thîi paj kàp khun sǔaj  
The girl who goes with you is pretty.
7. khon thîi ca rian phaasăa dāj dii tōon phūut phaasăa nán samǒe  
People who are going to learn a language well must speak it constantly.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

k) Expansion Drill (Combine Sentences 1 and 2 and form Sentence 3.)

<u>Sentence 1</u>	<u>Sentence 2</u>	<u>Sentence 3</u>
bâan sǔaj the house is pretty	thîi khun jùu that you live in	bâan thîi khun jùu sǔaj The house you live in is pretty.
nânsǔy dii book is good	thîi khun sýy that you bought	nânsǔy thîi khun sýy dii The book you bought is is good.
roonriian dii  school is good	thîi kháw khæj riian that he used to study (at)	roonriian thîi kháw khæj riian dii The school he used to study at is good.
nânsǔy dii book is good	thîi kháw khǎan that he wrote	nânsǔy thîi kháw khǎan dii The book he wrote is good.
ráanaahǎan dii  restaurant is good	thîi khun bòok that you told (about)	ráanaahǎan thîi khun bòok dii The restaurant that you told (me about) is good.
caṅwàt dii  province is good	thîi khun ca paj that you are going (to)	caṅwàt thîi khun ca paj dii The province you are going to is good.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mii khruu thaj lăaj thîi khun rian      mii khruu thaj lăaj khon  
khon thîi roonrian      thîi roonrian thîi khun  
rian

There are many Thai teachers at the school.      that you study (at)      There are many Thai teachers at the school where you study at.

rót sŭaj      thîi phŭujĭn      rót thîi phŭujĭn khonnán  
khonnán khàp      khàp sŭaj

car is pretty      that that woman is driving      The car that woman is driving is pretty.

1) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1, 2, 3 to form sentence 4.)

Sentences 1, 2, 3

Sentence 4<sup>1</sup>

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. kháw pen khruu<br>kháw sŏn phaasăathaj<br>kháw pen khonthaj     | khruu thîi sŏn phaasăathaj<br>pen khonthaj     |
| 2. kháw pen phŭujĭn<br>kháw paj kàp khun<br>kháw sŭaj              | phŭujĭn thîi paj kàp khun sŭaj                 |
| 3. kháw pen nákrían<br>kháw rian thĭnĭi<br>kháw pen khon ameerikan | nákrían thîi rian thĭnĭi pen<br>khon ameerikan |

---

<sup>1</sup>The student may give an acceptable response which differs from the one given here.

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>4. kháw pen nákrían<br/>kháw jáak phûut phaasǎa<br/>tàanprathêet kèn<br/>kháw tōon phûut samǎe</p>                | <p>nákrían thîi jáak phûut phaasǎa<br/>tāanprathêet kèn tōon phûut<br/>samǎe</p>                |
| <p>5. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>krasuan tãanprathêet<br/>kháw ca paj myan thaj<br/>kháw tōon rian phaasǎathaj</p> | <p>khâarâatchakaan krasuan<br/>tãanprathêet thîi ca paj myan<br/>thaj tōon rian phaasǎathaj</p> |

m) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. thîi kháw khǎan that he wrote	nǎnsýy lêm nǎj dii Which book is good?	lêm thîi kháw khǎan The one he wrote.
2. thîi chýy phimphaa who is named Pimpa	phûujǎn khon nǎj sǎaj Which woman is pretty?	khon thîi chýy phimphaa The one named Pimpa.
3. thîi maa càak juusít who came from USIS	nákrían khon nǎj kèn Which student is smart?	khon thîi maa càak juusít The one from USIS.
4. thîi khun sòn hâj phǎm that you sent me	pàakkaa dâam nǎj dii Which pen is good?	dâam thîi khun sòn hâj phǎm The one you sent me.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|
| 5. | thîi kamlaŋ phûut<br>who is speaking                  | khun thăăwǎon, khon<br>năj<br>Which person is<br>Thaworn? | khon thîi kamlaŋ<br>phûut<br>The one who is<br>speaking.            |
| 6. | thîi phûut rew<br>that speaks fast                    | khun mǎsrîi, khon năj<br>Which person is<br>Mary?         | khon thîi phûut rew<br>The one who speaks<br>fast.                  |
| 7. | thîi thamŋaan thîi<br>juusǎom<br>who works at<br>USOM | khun cǎon, khonnăj<br>Which person is<br>John?            | khon thîi thamŋaan<br>thîi juusǎom<br>The one who works<br>at USOM. |

### 11.3 EXERCISES

- a) Find out what some of the activities are that students engage in with their wives, friends, and others.
- b) Ask questions about the number of various kinds of objects (windows, pencils, etc.) there are in your classroom.
- c) Ask and answer questions concerning the number of people employed in various institutions (egs. State Department, etc.)
- d) Ask and answer questions about the following:
  1. countries in Asia and Europe
  2. provinces in Thailand
  3. cities in the U.S., and in Thailand
  4. nationalities in the U.N., in Asia, in Europe, and in Thailand
  5. provinces and cities in various parts of Thailand

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- e) Find out how many people in the classroom have various skills, such as the ability to drive a car, play tennis, etc.
- f) Find out which objects in the classroom are considered to be good by other students.
- g) The instructor will put problems in addition on the board beginning with easy ones and proceeding to more difficult ones, thus

6 + 7 = ? The students are to read the problems and supply the correct answers.

### 11.4 VOCABULARY

eesia	Asia
ỳyn ỳyn	other, others, other ones
bòk	to tell
cèt	seven
chán	class, rank, grade, floor (in a building)
floridâa	Florida
hâa	five
hòk	six
hòk-sìp	sixty
jàak	to want to
jfi-sìp	twenty
kâaw	nine
kâw-sìp	ninety
kâw-sìp èt	ninety one
khelifoonia	California
kii	how many, how much (question word)
kiilaa	sport(s), athletics

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

lǎaj	many, several
láan	million
lɛ́	and
líaj dèk	to take care of children, to raise children
michikɛɛn	Michigan
mɛsachusɛ̀t	Massachusetts
mýyn	ten thousand
naj	in, inside
nákphaasǎa	linguistic scientist
nóoj	few
nỳn (nyŋ)	one
pèet	eight
phan	thousand
phimphaa	Pimpa (female first name)
rew	fast, soon
róoj	hundred
sàhàprachaachâat	The United Nations
sǎam	three
sǎam-sìp	thirty
sěɛn	hundred thousand
sìi-sìp	forty
sìp	ten
thánmòt	altogether
thâwraj	how many, how much (question word)
thîinân	there
tôn	must, have to

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWELVE

#### 12.0 BASIC DIALOG: My Family

- A: khun mii phĩnóoŋ lǎaj  
khon máj khráp      Do you have many brothers  
and sisters?
- B: khun phôo khun mĕs phǒm  
mii lûuk nĕa khon khráp      My parents have five children.
- A: khun pen khon thĩi  
thĕwràj      Which are you?
- B: phǒm pen khon klaaŋ  
mii phĩichaaj sǒoŋ khon,  
nóoŋsǎaw sóoŋ khon      I'm the middle one.  
There are two older brothers,  
two younger sisters.
- A: phĩichaaj khǒoŋ khun  
tĕŋŋaan rýjaŋ      Are your older brothers  
married (yet)?
- B: tĕŋ léew khon nyŋ, ìik  
khon nyŋ jaŋ pen sòot      One is married, and one is  
(still) single.
- A: khǒothôot léew khun la  
khráp      And you?
- B: phǒm mii khrǒopkhrua  
léew khráp      I have a family.
- A: khǒothôot, khun mii bùt  
rýplàaw khráp      Do you have children?
- B: mii khon diaw khráp  
pen phũuchaaj      I have only one.  
He's a boy.
- A: aajú thĕwràj khráp      How old is he?
- B: hòk khùap khráp      Six.

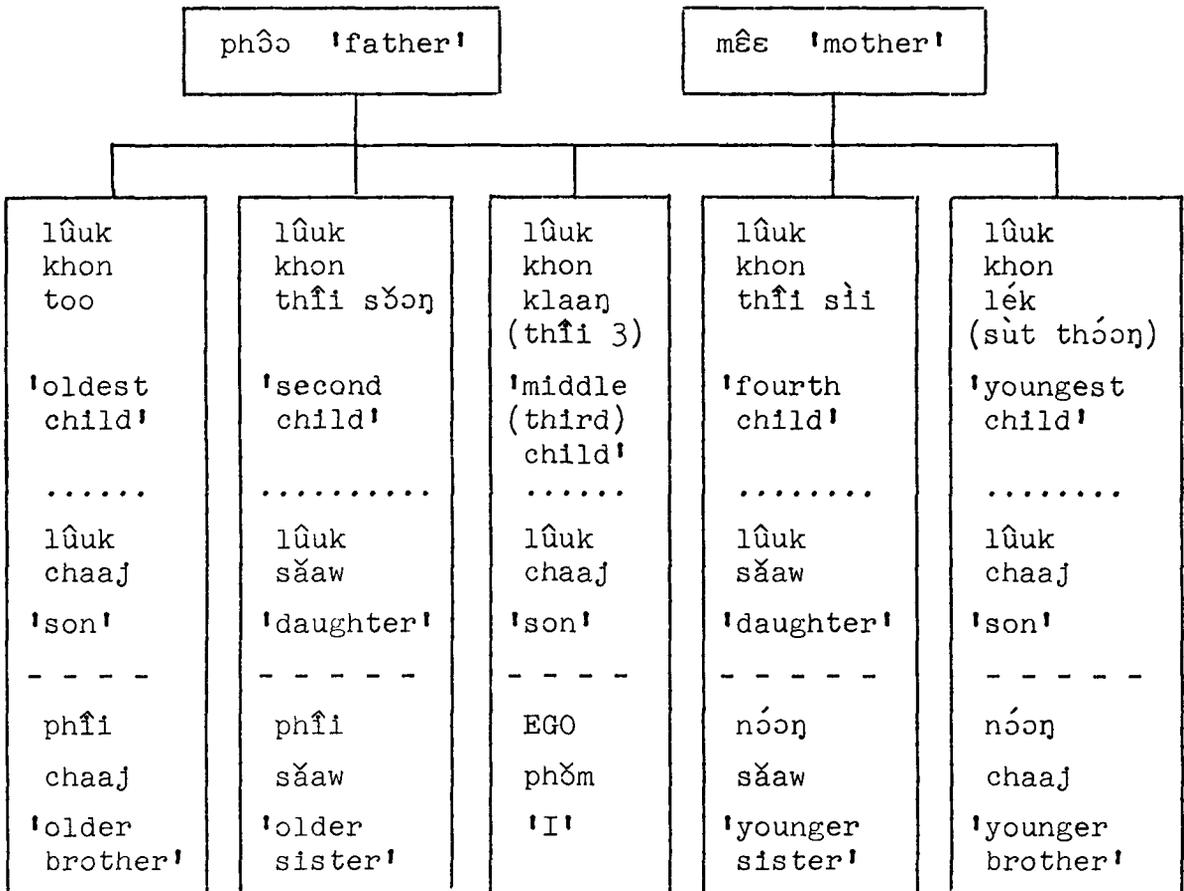
# THAI BASIC COURSE

## 12.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) The chart below gives the terms used in Thai for different members of the immediate family in terms of age, sex, and relationship to the speaker (Ego):

khŕôəpkhrua phǒm

'My Family'



1. nǒəŋ alone means: 'younger brothers and/or sisters'
- phîi alone means: 'older brothers and/or sisters'
- phîinǒəŋ alone means: 'older and younger brothers and/or sisters'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. bùt = lûuk 'child' bùt is more elegant;  
lûuk is more common.

3. lûuk khon nyṇ means 'a child'  
lûuk nyṇ khon means 'one child'  
lûuk khon diaw means 'only one child'.

b) tènṇaan 'to marry'; tèn 'decorate, adorn' + ṇaan 'ceremony' tènṇ is a verb and ṇaan is its noun complement. In responses to questions only the verb is necessary.

### 12.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Ordinal number constructions consist of thîi + cardinal numbers (or question word replacements for them)<sup>1</sup>.

<u>thîi sîi</u>	'fourth'	:	<u>thîi + sîi</u>	'4'
<u>thîi cèt</u>	'seventh'	:	<u>thîi + cèt</u>	'7'
<u>thîi nyṇ rǒoj</u>	'hundredth'	:	<u>thîi + nyṇ rǒoj</u>	'100', etc.
<u>thîi thâwràj</u>	'the how manyeth'	:	<u>thîi + thâwràj</u>	'how many'

b) rêek means 'to be first in time, quality, in a series or sequence, or from point of origin.

phǒm pen lûuksîit khon                    'I was his first student.'

rêek khǒṇ khâw

thîi nyṇ refers to the first item in a numbered series of lessons, floors (in a building), etc.

chán thîi nyṇ                    'the first floor'

bòt thîi nyṇ                    'lesson one'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) Ordinal numbers occur immediately after classifiers and in construction with them.

lûuk khon thîi sǎam                    'the third child'  
nǎnsýy lêm thîi cèt                    'the seventh book'

- d) aajú 'age' is a noun and is used in equational sentences like the following:

Noun Phrase	=	Noun Phrase
kháw		aajú jfi-síp pii
'He	(is)	20 (age-20-year).'

In questions aajú thâwràj is used generally for asking someone's age but aajú kii pii may be used for younger persons. The response is usually (number of years) + pii but for persons under 12, (number of years) + khuap is used.

For example:

Q: lûuk khon lék aajú kii pii                    'How old is your youngest?'

A: hòk khuap                    '(He's) six.'

Q: khun phôo khun aajú thâwràj                    'How old is your father?'

A: hâa-síp sǎam pii                    '53'

- e) lésw rý jan 'or not yet?' is used in questions to find out the state of an action (complete or not complete). lésw is often omitted or occurs in reduced form in lýjan or léjan. It may occur as ýjan or éjan in very rapid speech. The responses to it are either:

1. jan 'not yet' (or) 2. Verb + lésw 'Action completed'.

Q: khun thaان khâaw lésw rýjan                    'Have you eaten yet?'

R: Negative: jan khráp                    'No.' (lit. 'not yet.')

Affirmative: thaان lésw khráp                    '(Yes), I have.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

f) Observe the use of jaŋ mâj and jaŋ mâj dâj in the examples below:

- kháw jaŋ jùu thîini. . . 'She's still here.  
kháw jaŋ mâj paj. 'She hasn't gone yet.'
- phǒm khít wâa kháw paj 'I thought he had gone  
thurá lɛ́ɛw tɛɛ kháw on business already,  
jaŋ mâj dâj paj but he hadn't.'

The meaning of the first example is 'He hasn't gone yet (because he doesn't want or need to), but he may go yet'. The meaning of the second example is 'He could (or should) have gone, but he didn't. (See 5.2a).

g) When classifier phrases with diaw or lǎaj refer to the pronoun subject of the sentence, they occur after the main verb, usually at the end of the sentence.

- kháw paj khon diaw 'He went by himself.'  
kháw paj kan lǎaj khon 'Several of them went together.'

### 12.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

- kháw pen phîichaj phǒm  
He is my older brother.
- thân pen khun phôo phǒm  
He is my father.
- kháw pen khun phôo phûujĩŋ  
khon nán  
He's that girl's father.

#### Pattern 2

- phǒm pen nóoŋchaaj kháw  
I am his younger brother.
- phǒm pen lûukchaaj thâan  
I am his son.
- phûujĩŋ khon nán pen  
lûuksăaw kháw  
That girl is his daughter.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. kháw pen nóŋchaaj phǒm<br/>He is my younger brother.</p>  | <p>phǒm pen phǐichaaaj kháw<br/>I'm his older brother.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw pen nóŋsǎaw phǒm<br/>She's my younger sister.</p>    | <p>phǒm pen phǐichaaaj kháw<br/>I'm her older brother.</p> |
| <p>6. kháw pen nóŋsǎaw dichán<br/>She is my younger sister.</p> | <p>dichán pen phǐisǎaw kháw<br/>I'm her older sister.</p>  |
| <p>7. kháw pen phǐisǎaw phǒm<br/>She's my older sister.</p>     | <p>phǒm pen nóŋchaaj kháw<br/>I'm her younger brother.</p> |
| <p>8. kháw pen phǐichaaaj phǒm<br/>He's my older brother.</p>   | <p>phǒm pen nóŋchaaj kháw<br/>I'm his younger brother.</p> |
| <p>9. kháw pen nóŋchaaj dichán<br/>He's my younger brother.</p> | <p>dichán pen phǐisǎaw kháw<br/>I'm his older sister.</p>  |
| <p>10. thâan pen khun mĕs phǒm<br/>She's my mother.</p>         | <p>phǒm pen lûukchaaj thâan<br/>I'm her son.</p>           |

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
too	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>too</u>	He's the oldest child.
sǒŋ	kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>sǒŋ</u>	She's the second child.
rĕk	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>rĕk</u>	He's the first child.
sǎam	kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>sǎam</u>	She's the third child.
klaaŋ	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>klaaŋ</u>	He's the middle child.
hâa	kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>hâa</u>	He's the fifth child.
lék	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>lék</u>	She's the smallest child. (youngest)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sii	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi <u>sii</u>	He's the fourth child.
cèt	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi <u>cèt</u>	She's the seventh child.
too	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>too</u>	He's the oldest child.

### c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sǎam	lûukchaaj khon thîi thâwràj Which son (is it)?	(lûukchaaj) khon thîi <u>sǎam</u> The third.
2. sii	nákrian khon thîi thâwràj Which student (is it)?	(nákrian) khon thîi <u>sii</u> The fourth.
3. hòk	khruu khon thîi thâwràj Which teacher (is it)?	(khruu) khon thîi <u>hòk</u> The sixth.
4. sǒɔŋ	mǒɔ khon thîi thâwràj Which doctor (is it)?	(mǒɔ) khon thîi <u>sǒɔŋ</u> The second.
5. sǎam	chaawnaa khon thîi thâwràj Which farmer (is it)?	(chaawnaa) khon thîi <u>sǎam</u> The third.
6. nỳn	nànsỳy lêm thîi thâwràj Which book (is it)?	(nànsỳy) lêm thîi <u>nỳn</u> The first.
7. sǒɔŋ	pàakkaa dâam thîi thâwràj Which pen (is it)?	(pàakkaa) dâam thîi <u>sǒɔŋ</u> The second.
8. pèet	rót khan thîi thâwràj Which car (is it)?	(rót) khan thîi <u>pèet</u> The eighth.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. cèt      kradaat phèn thîi thâwràj      (kradaat) phèn thîi cèt  
Which sheet of paper      The first.  
(is it)?
10. nỳn      bòtnán bòt thîi thâwràj      (bòtnán) bòt thîi nỳn  
Which lesson (is it)?      The first.

### d) Response Drill

1. lék      kháw pen lûuk khon thîi      kháw pen lûuk khon lék  
thâwràj  
Which child is he?      He's the youngest (child).
2. too      kháw pen lûukchaaj khon      kháw pen lûukchaaj khon  
thîi thâwràj      too  
Which son is he?      He's the oldest (son).
3. klaaŋ      khun pen lûuk khon thîi      phôm pen lûuk khon klaaŋ  
thâwràj  
Which child are you?      I'm the middle child.
4. too      kháw pen lûuksăaw khon      kháw pen lûuksăaw khon  
thîi thâwràj      too  
Which daughter is she?      She's the oldest daughter.
5. lék      khun pen lûukchaaj khon      phôm pen lûukchaaj khon  
thîi thâwràj      lék  
Which son are you?      I'm the youngest son.
6. klaaŋ      dèk khon nán pen lûuk khon      dèk khon nán pen lûuk khon  
thîi thâwràj khõŋ kháw      klaaŋ khõŋ kháw  
Which of his children      That child is his  
is that child?      middle child.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. lék dèk khonníi pen nǎoŋ khon dèk khonníi pen nǎoŋ  
thíi thâwràj khǎoŋ kháw khon lék khǎoŋ kháw  
Which of his younger That child is the  
siblings is this child? youngest of his  
siblings.
8. too khun pen lôuk khon thíi phǎm pen lôuk khon too  
thâwràj Which child are you? I'm the oldest (child).

### e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phǎm pen lôuksìt khon rĕĕk I was his first student.  
khǎoŋ kháw
2. kháw pen khruu phaasǎathaj khon She was the first Thai  
rĕĕk khǎoŋ éf-és-aj teacher at FSI.
3. náŋsǎy lĕm níi pen náŋsǎy lĕm This book was the first  
rĕĕk thíi kháw khĭan book he wrote.
4. rǒt khan níi pen rǒt khan rĕĕk This car is my first car.  
khǎoŋ phǎm
5. phaasǎathaj pen phaasǎa Thai is the first foreign  
tàanprathĕet phaasǎarĕĕk language I studied.  
thíi phǎm rian
6. kháw pen khon rĕĕk thíi phǎm He is the first person  
rúucàk I met.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>7. mǎo khon nán pen <u>mǎo khon rĕk</u><br/>naj caŋwàt níi</p>                                | <p>That doctor was the first<br/>doctor in this province.</p>         |
| <p>8. prathaanaathípbadii wǎochintān<br/>pen prathaanaathípbadii khon<br/>rĕk khǒŋ ameerikaa</p> | <p>President Washington was<br/>the first American<br/>president.</p> |

### f) Response Drill

<u>Cues</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. phŭujǐŋ khonnán kìi pii	phŭujǐŋ khonnán aajú kìi pii How old is that woman?	kháw aajú sĭp hòk pii She's 16.
2. khun phōo khun, thâwràj (50)	khun phōokhun aajú thâwràj How old is your father?	thāan aajú nāa sĭp pii He's 50.
3. phŷan khun, thâwràj (30)	phŷan khun aajú thâwràj How old is your friend?	kháw aajú sǎam-sĭp pii She's thirty.
4. phĭichaaj khun, thâwràj (29)	phĭichaaj khun aajú thâwràj How old is your older brother?	kháw aajú jĭi-sĭp kâw pii He's 29.
5. lŭukchaaj khun, kìi khùap (2)	lŭukchaaj khun aajú kìi khùap How old is your son?	kháw aajú sǒŋ khùap He's 2.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. diaw	kháw mii lûuk kîi khon How many children does he have?	kháw mii lûuk khon diaw He has only one child.
2. lăaj	kháw mii phÿan kîi khon How many friends does he have?	kháw mii phÿan lăaj khon He has many friends.
3. diaw	kháw mii nán̄sŷy kîi lêm How many books does he have?	kháw mii nán̄sŷy lêm diaw He has only one book.
4. diaw	kháw sŷy samùt kîi lêm How many notebooks did he buy?	kháw sŷy samùt lêm diaw He bought only one notebook.
5. lăaj	kháw rúucàk khon thaj kîi khon How many Thais does he know?	kháw rúucàk khon thaj lăaj khon He knows many Thais.
6. diaw	kháw rúucàk khon aṅkrìt kîi khon How many Englishmen does he know?	kháw rúucàk khon aṅkrìt khon diaw He knows only one Englishman.
7. diaw	kháw paj kàp khraj Who did he go with?	kháw paj khon diaw He went by himself.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. lǎaj kháw paj kàp khraj kháw paj kan lǎaj khon  
 Who did they go with? Several of them went together.
9. diaw kháw thaan khâaw kàp khraj kháw thaan khon diaw  
 Who does he eat with? He eats alone.

### 1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. chÿy cim, coon	khon nyŋ <u>chÿy cim</u> , ìik khon nyŋ chÿy <u>coon</u> One person is named Jim; another, John.
2. pen thaj, ameerikan	khon nyŋ <u>pen thaj</u> , ìik khon nyŋ pen <u>ameerikan</u> One person is Thai; another, American.
3. pen khruu, thahǎan	khon nyŋ <u>pen khruu</u> , ìik khon nyŋ pen <u>thahǎan</u> One person is a teacher; another, a soldier.
4. pen phîi, nóon	khon nyŋ <u>pen phîi</u> , ìik khon nyŋ pen <u>nóon</u> One is an older sibling; another is a younger sibling.
5. sǎaj, mâj sǎaj	khon nyŋ <u>sǎaj</u> , ìik khon nyŋ <u>mâj sǎaj</u> One person is pretty; another, not.
6. kèn, mâj kèn	khon nyŋ <u>kèn</u> , ìik khon nyŋ <u>mâj kèn</u> One person is skillful; another isn't.
7. phûut phaasǎa an̄krìt dâj, mâj dâj	khon nyŋ <u>phûut phaasǎa an̄krìt dâj</u> , ìik khon nyŋ phûut <u>mâj dâj</u> One person can speak English; another can't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. jùu myaη thaj, khon nyη jùu myaη thaj, ìik khon nyη jùu  
 jùu ameerikaa ameerikaa  
 One person is in Thailand; another in America.
9. tènŋaan lésw khon nyη tènŋaan lésw, ìik khon nyη jaη  
 jaη pen sòot pen sòot  
 One person is married; another is still single.
10. paj lésw, jaη jùu khon nyη paj lésw, ìik khon nyη jaη jùu  
 One person has gone; another is still here.

### j) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. cim, cœn	sœŋ khon nán chÿy araj What are those two people named?	chÿy <u>cim</u> khon nyη, ìik khon nyη chÿy <u>cœn</u> One is named Jim, the other John.
2. tèn lésw, jaη pen sòot	nœŋchaaj khun tènŋaan lésw rýjaη Are your younger brothers married yet?	<u>tèn lésw</u> khon nyη, ìik khon nyη <u>jaη pen sòot</u> One is; one isn't.
3. pen mœœ, pen khâarâatchakaan	phÿan khun sœŋ khon nán thamŋaan araj khráp What do your two friends do for a living?	<u>pen mœœ</u> khon nyη, ìik khon nyη <u>pen</u> <u>khâarâatchakaan</u> One's a doctor; the other a government employee.

4. phûut dâj sǎɔŋ khon nán phûut phûut mâj dâj phaasǎa aŋkrít dâj phûut dâj khon nyɲ lîk khon nyɲ phûut mâj dâj

5. dii, mâj dii náŋsǎy sǎɔŋ lêm nán dii lêm nyɲ, lîk dii máj lêm nyɲ mâj dii  
 Are those two One is good; the  
 books good? other isn't.

k) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

1. rúucàk phýan phǒm khun rúucàk phýan phǒm léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Have you met my friend yet?
2. kháw rúucàk kháw rúucàk phýan phǒm léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Has he met my friend yet?
3. paj thamŋaan kháw paj thamŋaan léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Has he gone to work yet?
4. phûut phaasǎa kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj léew rýjaŋ khráp  
thaj dâj Can he speak Thai yet?
5. khun khun phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Can you speak Thai yet?
6. sýy náŋsǎy khun sýy náŋsǎy léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Have you bought the books yet?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. thaan khâaw                      khun thaan khâaw léew rýjan khráp  
Have you eaten yet?
8. mií khrôpkhrua                  khun mií khrôpkhrua léew rýjan khráp  
Do you have a family yet?
9. àan nánsýy lêm nán      khun àan nánsýy lêm nán léew rýjan khráp  
Have you read that book yet?
10. rian bòt thîi sîp              khun rian bòt thîi sîp léew rýjan khráp  
Have you studied lesson 10 yet?

### 1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. yes	khun rian bòt thîi sîp léew rýjan khráp Have you studied lesson 10 already?	rian léew khráp Yes, we have.
2. no	khun thaan khâaw léew rýjan khráp Have you eaten yet?	jan khráp Not yet.
3. yes	kháw paj thamnaan léew rýjan khráp Has he gone to work yet?	paj léew khráp Yes, he has.
4. no	khun sôŋ khon rúucàk kan léew rýjan khráp Have you two met yet?	jan khráp Not yet.
5. no	kháw mií nánsýy léew rýjan khráp Does he have the books yet?	jan khráp Not yet.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |     |  |                                 |
|-----|-----|--|---------------------------------|
| 6.  | yes | thīnān aakàat nǎaw rýjaŋ<br>Is it cold there yet?                          | nǎaw léɛw khráp<br>Yes, it is.  |
| 7.  | no  | khun phūut kàp kháw léɛw rýjaŋ khráp<br>Have you spoken with him yet?      | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.           |
| 8.  | yes | khun phūut phaasǎa thaj dāj léɛw rýjaŋ<br>khráp<br>Can you speak Thai yet? | dāj léɛw<br>Yes, I can.         |
| 9.  | no  | khun khīan phaasǎa thaj dāj léɛw rýjaŋ<br>khráp<br>Can you write Thai yet? | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.           |
| 10. | yes | kháw khàp rót pen léɛw rýjaŋ khráp<br>Does he know how to drive yet?       | pen léɛw khráp<br>Yes, he does. |
| 11. | no  | kháw wāaj nám pen léɛw rýjaŋ<br>Can he swim yet?                           | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.           |

m) Transformation Drill (Add a negative statement with jaŋ to the affirmative statement.)

### Affirmative Statement

### Negative Statement

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. phǒm maa léɛw<br>I've come already                   | tèɛ kháw jaŋ mâj maa<br>but he hasn't yet.                      |
| 2. phǒm mii náŋsǎy léɛw<br>I have books already         | tèɛ kháw jaŋ mâj mii<br>but he doesn't yet.                     |
| 3. phaasǎa thaj phǒm dii léɛw<br>My Thai's good already | tèɛ phaasǎa thaj khǒŋ kháw jaŋ<br>mâj dii<br>but his isn't yet. |





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. phǒm khít wâa kháw sǒn khun lésw tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj sǒn  
I thought he had already taught  
it to you, but he hadn't.
7. phǒm khít wâa kháw àan nánsǎy lêm tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj àan  
níi lésw  
I thought he had already read  
this book, but he hadn't.
8. phǒm khít wâa kháw phim còtmǎaj tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj phim  
lésw  
I thought he had already typed  
the letter , but he hadn't.
9. phǒm khít wâa kháw sýy nánsǎy lêm tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj sýy  
nán lésw  
I thought he had already  
bought that book , but he hadn't.
10. phǒm khít wâa kháw faŋ théep an tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj faŋ  
níi lésw  
I thought he had already listened  
to this tape , but he hadn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### p) Sentence Construction Drill

One student forms a sentence like Sentence 1 and another forms a question like Sentence 2 from the cues given. The first student answers the question.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Sentence 1</u>	<u>Sentence 2</u>
1. paj sòŋ còtmǎaj	phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj paj sòŋ còtmǎaj I haven't mailed the letters yet.	khun jaŋ mâj dâj paj sòŋ còtmǎaj rěkh ráp Haven't you mailed the letters yet?
2. tha an aahǎan klaanwan	phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj tha an aahǎan klaanwan I haven't eaten lunch yet.	khun jaŋ mâj dâj tha an aahǎan klaanwan rěkh ráp Haven't you eaten lunch yet?
3. kèn	phǒm jaŋ mâj kèn  I'm not good yet.	khun jaŋ mâj kèn rěkh ráp Aren't you good yet?
4. phûut phaasǎathaj	phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj jaŋ mâj dâj (phǒm jaŋ phûut phaasǎa thaj mâj dâj) I can't speak Thai yet.	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj jaŋ mâj dâj rěkh ráp Can't you speak Thai yet?
5. rúucàk kháw	phǒm jaŋ mâj rúucàk kháw I haven't met her yet.	khun jaŋ mâj rúucàk kháw rěkh ráp Haven't you met her yet?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6.	sýy nánsýy	phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj sýy nánsýy	khun jaŋ mâj dâj sýy nánsýy rěkháp
		I haven't bought books yet.	Haven't you bought books yet?

### 12.4 EXERCISES

- a) Make up a family chart (like the one in 12.1) for each member of the class and the tutor.
- b) Ask questions about each member of the family in order to find out the following information:
  1. name
  2. age
  3. present and past occupations
  4. residence
  5. place of work
  6. travel experience
  7. languages spoken
  8. skill in sports and other activities
- c) If some of the people in the class have children, find out the name, sex, and age of them.

### 12.5 VOCABULARY

aahǎan klaarwan	lunch, noontime meal
aajú	age (in years)
an	classifiers of things
bòt (bòt)	lesson (in a textbook)
bùt (khon)	child (elegant usage) (one's direct descendant)
dèk (khon)	child (immature person)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

diaw	one only, only
jaŋ	still, not yet
khan	classifier for cars, and other vehicles
khít	to think
khon klaaŋ	the middle one (of children)
khon lék	the youngest one (of children)
khon sùt thóoŋ	the youngest one (of children)
khon too	the oldest one (of children)
khrôpkhrua	the family
(khrôpkhrua)	
khùap	year (of age for people under 14 years)
khun phôo	parents (polite usage)
khun mêe (khon)	
klaaŋwan	in the daytime, by day
lék	small, little (in size)
léew	already (used to indicate completed action)
léew rý jaŋ	or not yet? (used in questions)
léew lý jaŋ	
léew lé jaŋ	
léew ý jaŋ	
léew é jaŋ	
lûuk (khon)	child (common usage, refers to one's direct descendant)
lûuksít (khon)	student, pupil
mêe (khon)	mother
nóoŋ (khon)	younger brothers and/or sisters
nóoŋ chaaŋ (khon)	younger brother(s)
nóoŋ sǎaw (khon)	younger sister(s)
ŋaan	ceremony

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phîi (khon)	older brother(s) and/or sister(s)
phîi chaaj (khon)	older brother(s)
phîi nǎw (khon)	brother(s) and sister(s)
phîi sǎaw (khon)	older sister(s)
phǎw (khon)	father
pii	year
prathan	
aathǐpboodii (khon)	the president of a country
rǎek	to be first
rýjaŋ	yet (question word)
sòot	to be single, unmarried
tǎn	to decorate, adorn (the verb in <u>tǎn naan</u> )
tǎn naan	to marry, to get married, to be married
thîi	form that is used with numerals to form ordinal numbers, hence <u>thîi sǎam</u> 'third', etc.
too	big, large, mature

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON THIRTEEN

### 13.0 BASIC DIALOG: Telling Time

- A: kǐi moon lǎew khráp                      What time is it?  
B: hâa moon cháaw kwàa lǎew khráp        It's after 11 a.m.  
    naalikaa khǒon khun weelaa              What time is it  
    thâwràj khráp                              by your watch?
- A: naalikaa phǒm ìik hâa naathii            By my watch it's five  
    ca hâa moon cháaw                        minutes to 11 a.m.  
B: naalikaa khun cháa paj sǐp hâa         Your watch is fifteen  
    naathii khráp                              minutes slow.
- A: nán, phǒm hěn ca tǒn rǐip                In that case, it seems  
    paj dǎawníi                                I will have to hurry.  
B: khun ca rǐip paj nǎj khráp                Where are you hurrying to?  
A: ca paj aw nən thǐi thanaakaan         I'll go get some money at  
    kòon, lǎew ca paj prajsanii              the bank first, then go  
    to the Post Office.  
B: ca klàp mǎyaràj khráp                    When will you return?  
A: tǒon bàaj bàaj khráp                     Sometime in the afternoon.

### 13.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) kwàa 'more than, to a greater extent or degree'

hâa              moon      cháaw      kwàa      lǎew  
(11 (lit. 5) o'clock a.m. more than already)

'It's after 11 a.m.'

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

b) khrȳn 'half'

sǎn            moon      cháaw      khrȳn  
(8 [lit. 2]) o'clock a.m. half [hour]

'8:30 a.m.'

c) tron 'exactly, sharp (of time)'

hâa            moon      cháaw      tron  
(11 [lit. 5]) o'clock a.m. sharp)

'11 a.m. sharp'

13.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) ik... ca is used to indicate time in the future.

ik	Period of Time	ca	Clock Time
ik (additional)	hâa naathii 5 minutes	ca will be	sǎam moon cháaw 9 a.m.)
'It's five minutes to 9 a.m.'			

b) To indicate the extent of error of a timepiece the following construction is used:

Direction of Error	Excess	Amount of Time
cháa / rew (slow / fast)	paj too much	hâa naathii 5 minutes)
'(It's) five minutes slow/fast.'		

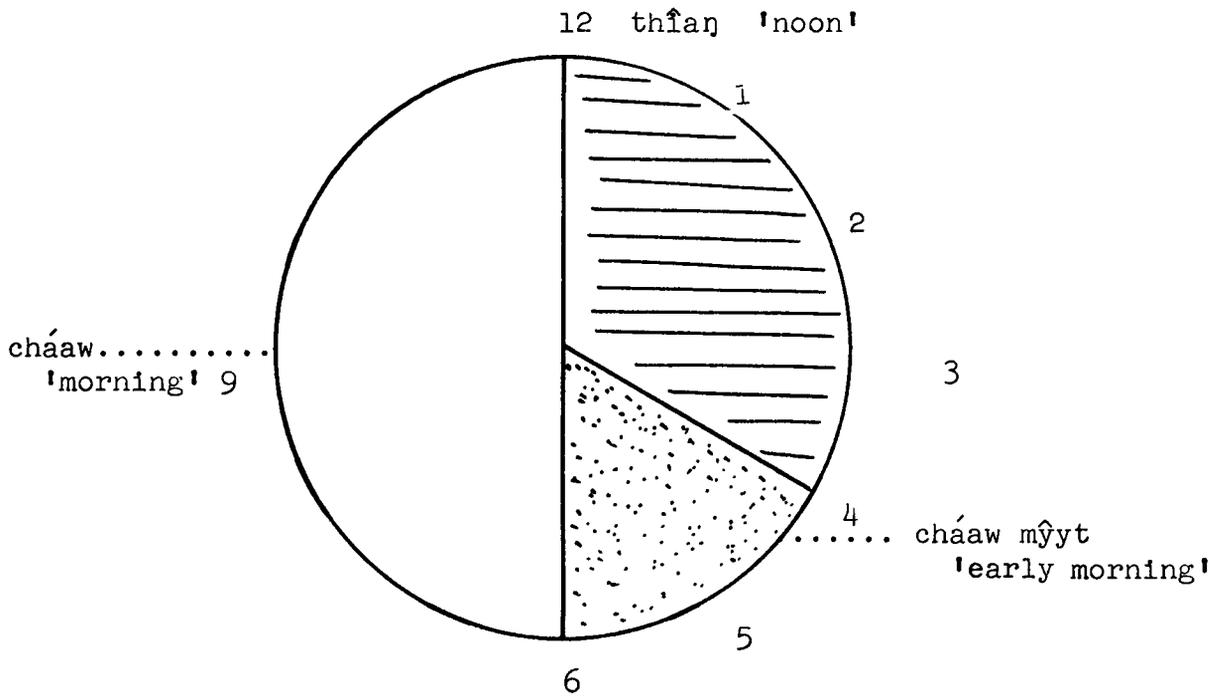
# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## 13.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaanwan 'daytime'



cháaw:	hòk moon cháaw	' 6 a.m.'	cháaw mýt:	tii sǐi '4 a.m.'
	moon cháaw <sup>1</sup>	' 7 a.m.'		tii hâa '5 a.m.'
	sǒn moon cháaw	' 8 a.m.'		
	sǎam moon cháaw	' 9 a.m.'		
	sǐi moon cháaw	'10 a.m.'		
	hâa moon cháaw	'11 a.m.'		
	thian	'noon'		

---

<sup>1</sup>Bangkok speakers prefer moon cháaw, but many other persons say cèt moon cháaw.

Note to the Instructor: A real clock or a facsimile clock face should be used in performing many of the drills in this lesson.

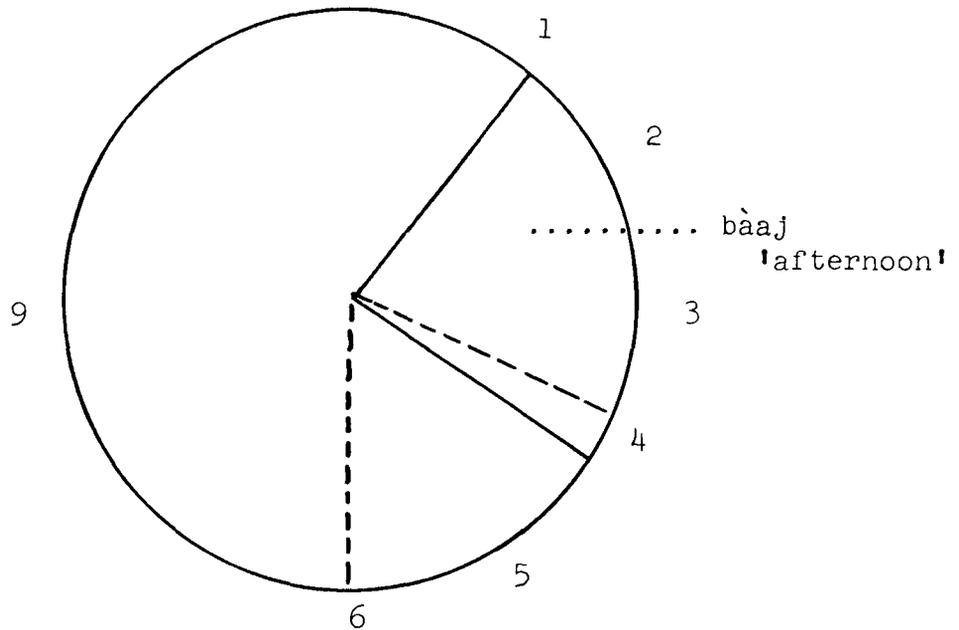
## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaanwan 'daytime'

12 thian 'noon'



bàaj:	bàaj moon	'1 p.m.'
	bàaj sǎon moon	'2 p.m.'
	bàaj sǎam moon	'3 p.m.'
	bàaj sǐi moon	'4 p.m. <sup>1</sup> '
jên:	sǐi moon jên	'4 p.m.'
	hâa moon jên	'5 p.m.'
	hòk moon jên	'6 p.m.'

---

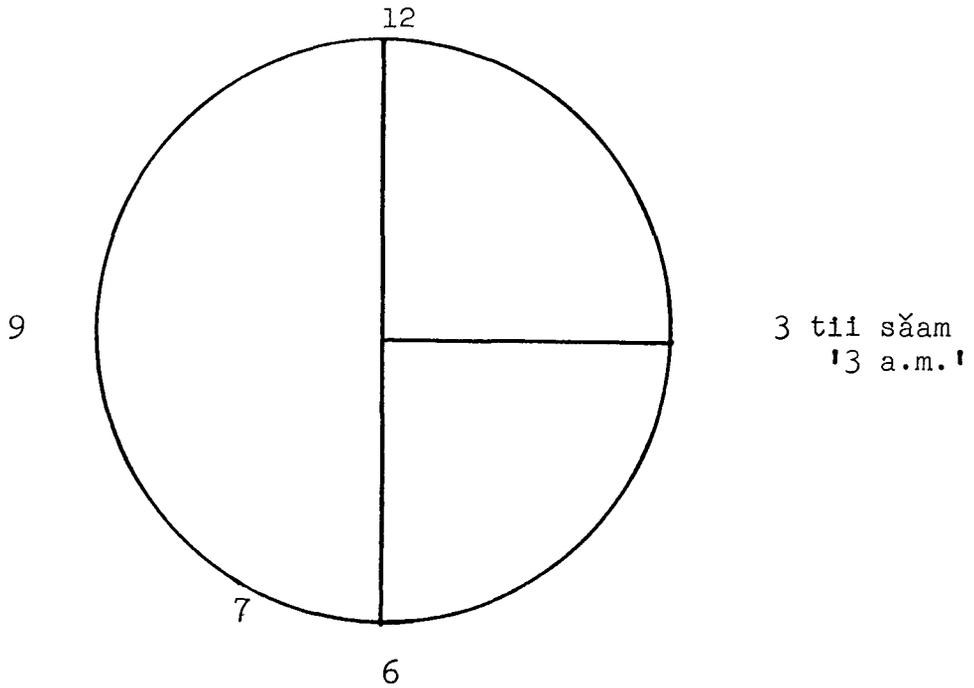
<sup>1</sup>Both bàaj sǐi moon and sǐi moon jên are used for 4 p.m.

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaaṅkhyyn 'nighttime'



nỳṅ thûm	' 7 p.m. '
sǎoṅ thûm	' 8 p.m. '
sǎam thûm	' 9 p.m. '
sìi thûm	'10 p.m. '
hâa thûm	'11 p.m. '
thîaṅ khyyn	'12' (midnight)
tii nỳṅ	' 1 a.m. '
tii sǎoṅ	' 2 a.m. '
tii sǎam	' 3 a.m. '

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill (Point at the time on the clock face.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 11 a.m.	kìi moon lếw khráp What time is it?	hâa moon cháaw lếw khráp 11 a.m.
2. 9 a.m.	kìi moon lếw khráp What time is it?	săam moon cháaw khráp 9 a.m.
3. 10 a.m.	kìi moon lếw khráp What time is it?	sìi moon cháaw khráp 10 a.m.
4. 12 a.m.	kìi moon lếw khráp What time is it?	thian lếw khráp It's noon.
5. 1 p.m.	kìi moon lếw khráp What time is it?	bàaj moon khráp 1 p.m.
6. 3 p.m.	kìi moon lếw khráp What time is it?	bàaj săam moon khráp 3 p.m.
7. 4 p.m.	kìi moon lếw khráp What time is it?	sìi moon jen khráp 4 p.m.
8. 6 p.m.	kìi moon lếw khráp What time is it?	hòk moon jen khráp 6 p.m.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 7 p.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	nỳn thûm (léew) khráp 7 p.m.
2. 8 p.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	sỏ๓ thûm khráp 8 p.m.
3. 10 p.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	sỉi thûm khráp 10 p.m.
4. 11 p.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	hâa thûm khráp 11 p.m.
5. Midnight	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	thỉ๓n khyyn Midnight.
6. 2 a.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	tii sỏ๓ khráp 2 a.m.

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. tii sỉi sả๓ naathii	4:03 a.m.
2. tii hâa sỏ๓ naathii	5:02 a.m.
3. hòk moon cháaw sỉp hâa naathii	6:15 a.m.
4. moon cháaw jỉi-sỉp naathii	7:20 a.m.
5. sỏ๓ moon cháaw khrỳ๓	8:30 a.m.
6. sả๓ moon cháaw sỉi sỉp hâa naathii	9:45 a.m.
7. hâa moon cháaw tron	11:00 a.m.
8. thỉ๓n khrỳ๓	12:30 p.m.
9. bàaj moon hâa-sỉp naathii	1:50 p.m.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. hâa moon jen jîi-síp hâa naathii 5:25 p.m.
11. thûm khrÿn 7:30 p.m.
12. thîaŋ khyyn hâa naathii 12:05 a.m.

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. ìik jîi-síp naathii ca sǎam moon cháaw 8:40 a.m.
2. ìik síp hâa naathii ca hâa moon cháaw 10:45 a.m.
3. ìik síp sǒn naathii ca thîaŋ 11:48 a.m.
4. ìik cèt naathii ca bàaj moon 12:53 p.m.
5. ìik hâa naathii ca sîi moon jen 3:55 p.m.
6. ìik pèet naathii ca hâa moon khrÿn 11:22 a.m.
7. ìik jîi-síp hâa naathii ca thîaŋ khyyn 11:35 p.m.

### h) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. síp cèt	naalikaa phǒm cháa paj <u>síp cèt</u> naathii My watch is seventeen minutes slow.
2. khun	naalikaa <u>khun</u> cháa paj síp cèt naathii Your watch is 17 minutes slow.
3. khrÿn chûamoon	naalikaa khun cháa paj <u>khrÿn chûamoon</u> Your watch is half an hour slow.
4. jîi síp sǒn naathii	naalikaa khun cháa paj <u>jîi-síp sǒn naathii</u> Your watch is 22 minutes slow.
5. phǒm	naalikaa <u>phǒm</u> cháa paj jîi-síp sǒn naathii My watch is 22 minutes slow.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### i) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kâaw	naalikaá phǒm rew paj <u>kâaw</u> naathii My watch is 9 minutes fast.
2. khrÿn chûamoon	naalikaá phǒm rew paj <u>khrÿn chûamoon</u> My watch is half an hour fast.
3. kháw	naalikaá <u>kháw</u> rew paj khrÿn chûamoon His watch is half an hour fast.
4. sĭp hâa naathii	naalikaá kháw rew paj <u>sĭp hâa naathii</u> His watch is 15 minutes fast.

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Parts of the Day)

1. toon cháaw	5 a.m. to 9:00 a.m. <sup>1</sup>
2. toon sǎaj	9 a.m. to 11:59 a.m.
3. toon thĭan	12 a.m. to 12:50 p.m.
4. toon bàaj	1 p.m. to 4:00 p.m.
5. toon jen	4 p.m. to 6:30 p.m.
6. toon khâm	From 6:30 p.m. until around midnight
7. toon hŭakhâm	6:30 p.m. to 9 p.m.
8. toon dÿk	10:00 p.m. to 3 a.m.

---

1. Time periods are approximate only.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- k) Transformation Drill      Change from one pattern to the other.

tɔɔn cháaw <sup>1</sup>	weelaa cháaw
tɔɔn sǎaj	weelaa sǎaj
tɔɔn thĭan	weelaa thĭan
tɔɔn bàaj	weelaa bàaj
tɔɔn jen	weelaa jen
tɔɔn khâm	weelaa khâm

- l) Transformation Drill      (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

Pattern 1:    cháaw                      'In the morning'  
                  tɔɔn cháaw

Pattern 2:    cháaw cháaw                      'Sometime in the morning'  
                  tɔɔn cháaw cháaw

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
tɔɔn cháaw In the morning.	tɔɔn cháaw cháaw Sometime in the morning.
tɔɔn sǎaj In the late morning.	tɔɔn sǎaj sǎaj Sometime in the late morning.
tɔɔn thĭan At noon.	tɔɔn thĭan thĭan Sometime around noon.

---

<sup>1</sup>The meaning of these two patterns is the same. They are given in drill 'j'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<p>tɔɔn bàaj In the afternoon.</p>	<p>tɔɔn bàaj bàaj Sometime in the afternoon.</p>
<p>tɔɔn jen In the late afternoon.</p>	<p>tɔɔn jen jen Sometime in the late afternoon.</p>
<p>tɔɔn khâm khâm In the evening.</p>	<p>tɔɔn khâm khâm Sometime in the evening.</p>
<p>tɔɔn dỳk Late at night.</p>	<p>tɔɔn dỳk dỳk Sometime late at night.</p>

### m) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. tɔɔn bàaj bàaj	<p>khun ca klàp mỳaràj</p> <p>When will you return?</p>	<p>(klàp) tɔɔn bàaj bàaj khráp</p> <p>Sometime in the afternoon.</p>
2. tɔɔn khâm khâm	<p>khun ca duu nànsǎy mỳaràj</p> <p>When will you study?</p>	<p>(duu) tɔɔn khâm khâm khráp</p> <p>In the evening.</p>
3. tɔɔn thian thian	<p>khun ca thaان khâaw mỳaràj</p> <p>When will you eat?</p>	<p>(thaan) tɔɔn thian thian khráp</p> <p>Sometime around noon.</p>
4. tɔɔn jen jen	<p>khun ca paj bâan kháw mỳaràj</p> <p>When will you go to his house?</p>	<p>(paj) tɔɔn jen jen khráp</p> <p>Sometime in the late afternoon.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                             |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| 5. tɔɔn bàaj                | khun ca paj aw nɛən<br>m̂yaràj<br>When will you go<br>get the money?       | (paj) tɔɔn bàaj<br>khráp<br>In the afternoon.                      |
| 6. tɔɔn ĥa moon<br>cháaw   | khun ca paj sòn<br>pĥyan m̂yaràj<br>When will you see<br>your friend off? | (paj) tɔɔn ĥa<br>moon cháaw<br>At 11 a.m.                         |
| 7. tɔɔn jen jen             | khun ca ŵaj nám<br>m̂yaràj<br>When will you<br>go swimming?               | (ŵaj) tɔɔn jen<br>jen khráp<br>Sometime late in<br>the afternoon. |
| 8. tɔɔn d̂yk                | kháw maa m̂yaràj<br>When did he come?                                      | (maa) tɔɔn d̂yk<br>Late at night.                                  |
| 9. m̂yawaanníi              | kháw paj m̂yaràj<br>When did he go?  | (paj) m̂yawaanníi<br>Yesterday.                                    |
| 10. m̂ya bàaj ŝɔɔn<br>moon | kháw paj m̂yaràj<br>When did she go?                                       | (paj) m̂ya bàaj<br>ŝɔɔn moon<br>At 2 p.m.                         |
| 11. m̂ya k̂iiníi            | kháw pĥut kàp khun<br>m̂yaràj<br>When did he speak<br>to you?             | (pĥut) m̂yak̂iiníi<br>A short time ago.                           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### n) Transformation Drill

Observe the following examples:

- A: bàaj níi 'this afternoon' (Present or future time)  
m̂ya bàaj níi 'this afternoon' (Past time)
- B: khyynníi 'tonight' (Present or future time)  
m̂ya khyynníi 'tonight' (Past time)

#### Pattern 1

#### Pattern 2

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. jenníi<br>this afternoon  | m̂yajenníi<br>this afternoon   |
| 2. bàaj sǎam moon<br>3 p.m.  | m̂ya bàaj sǎam moon<br>3 p.m.  |
| 3. cháawníi<br>this morning  | m̂yacháawníi<br>this morning   |
| 4. khâmníi<br>this evening   | m̂yakhâmníi<br>this evening    |
| 5. thîaṅníi<br>this noon     | m̂yathîaṅníi<br>this noon      |
| 6. sîi moon jen<br>4 p.m.    | m̂ya sîimoon jen<br>4 p.m.     |
| 7. sǎam moon cháaw<br>9 a.m. | m̂ya sǎam moon cháaw<br>9 a.m. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Substitution Drill

Using the cues given form pairs of sentences like the following with léew as the connective:

Cue: paj aw nən, paj prajsanii

Sentences: ca paj aw nən kòn, léew ca paj prajsanii

I'll get the money (first), then go to the Post Office.

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. paj aw nánsǎy  
paj hônrían

ca paj aw nánsǎy kòn, léew ca paj  
hônrían

I'll get a book first, then  
go to the classroom.

2. paj thaan khâaw  
paj duu nǎŋ

ca paj thaan khâaw kòn, léew ca paj  
duu nǎŋ

I'll eat first, then go to  
the movies.

3. paj faŋ théep,  
paj hônsamùt

ca paj faŋ théep kòn, léew ca paj  
hônsamùt

I'll listen to tapes first,  
then go to the library.

4. paj talàat,  
paj bâan

ca paj talàat kòn, léew ca paj bâan

I'll go to the market, then home.

5. paj jùu krunthêep,  
jùu tàançanwàt

ca paj jùu krunthêep kòn, léew ca paj  
jùu tàançanwàt

I'll go live in Bangkok first,  
then go live in the provinces.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### p) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. thŋaŋ	thŋaŋ rýjaŋ Is it noon yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>thŋaŋ</u> Not yet.
2. bàaj	bàaj rýjaŋ Is it afternoon yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>bàaj</u> Not yet.
3. khâm	khâm rýjaŋ Is it evening yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>khâm</u> Not yet.
4. dýk	dýk rýjaŋ Is it late (at night) yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>dýk</u> Not yet.
5. cháaw	cháaw rýjaŋ Is it morning yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>cháaw</u> Not yet.

### 13.4 EXERCISES (Use a cardboard clock face with movable hands with the following exercises.)

- a) Set the hands on the clock face. One student asks what time it is and another responds according to the position of the hands.
- b) Set the hands on the clock face, then ask different students what time it will be in ten minutes, twenty minutes, one hour, etc.
- c) One student asks another what time it is by his watch; when he responds, the first student says that his watch is slow or fast by a certain number of minutes according to the time indicated by the classroom clock.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Set the clock hands. Student A announces the time indicated. Student B asks Student C if it is (part of the day) (toon bàaj, toon jen, etc.) yet. Student C responds either (1) that it is, or (2) that it isn't yet according to the time announced by Student A.
- e) Concerning the activities listed below, find out from other students:
1. If they did any of them yesterday, and if so, at what time;
  2. If they will do any of them tomorrow, and if so, at what time;
  3. If they do any of them every day, and if so, at what time; and
  4. If they have done any of them yet. If the reply is that they haven't yet, find out if they will do any of them tomorrow, and if so, at what time.

### Activities:

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| a) come to school   | b) go mail a letter       |
| c) play music       | d) drive a car            |
| e) go to the bank   | f) drink coffee           |
| g) go see a doctor  | h) go for a walk          |
| i) go shopping      | j) go eat in a restaurant |
| k) go to work       | l) write a letter         |
| m) study lessons    | n) play tennis            |
| o) go to the market |                           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 13.5 VOCABULARY

aw	to get, to take
bàaj / bàaj bàaj	afternoon, o'clock used for the time 1 p.m. - 4 p.m.
cháa	late, slow
cháaw	morning, a.m.
.cháawmÿyt	early morning
chûamoon	hour (measure of Time)
dǎawníi	right now
dỳk	11 p.m. - 3 a.m.
hěn	to see
hěn ca	think
hôn̄samùt (hôn̄)	library
hũakhâm	6 p.m. - 9 p.m.
jen	evening (used for 4 p.m. - 6 p.m.)
khâm	6 p.m. - 12 a.m.
khrȳn̄	half
khyyn	to be night
khyynníi	tonight
klaan̄khyyn	night time (used for 7 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent or degree
lésw	then
moon	o'clock, time
mÿa	used for past time
mÿaràj	when, question word
mÿyt	dark
naathii	minutes
nan̄	in that case
(cháa) paj	too much

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

rew	early, fast
rîip	to hurry
săaj	late, the time 9 a.m. - 11:59 a.m.
thîaŋ	noon
thîaŋ khyyn	midnight
thûm	o'clock, used for 7 p.m. - 11 p.m.
tii	o'clock (for the time 1 a.m. - 5 a.m.)
toon	sometime, time, part of (something)
tron	exactly, sharp (of time)
weelaa	time

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON FOURTEEN

#### 14.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (1)

- A: thěswníi mii ráantàtphǒm máj khráp  
Is there a barber shop around here?
- B: mii khráp, jùu fànnóon  
Yes, there is. On the other side (of the street)
- A: jùu tronǎj khráp  
Exactly where?
- B: jùu khâaṅkhâaṅ ráankaafɛ<sup>1</sup>  
Next to the coffee shop
- A: jùu thaansáaj rý thaṅkhwǎa khráp  
To the left or right?
- B: jùu thaansáaj  
To the left.
- A: thaṅkhwǎa khǒṅ ráankaafɛ pen araj khráp  
What's to the right of the coffee shop?
- B: pen ráanaahǎan  
A restaurant.
- A: chýy khiinóot, cháj máj khráp  
It's named 'Key Note' isn't it?
- B: máj cháj khráp ráan khiinóot jùu thǐnân  
No, it isn't. The Key Note is over there.
- A: thanǒn thǐi jùu thaṅ khwǎa nân chýy thanǒn araj khráp  
What's the name of the street on the right?
- B: thanǒn nán rěkhráp chýy thanǒn suriwon  
That street? It's Suriwong.

---

<sup>1</sup>Bangkok is a rapidly changing city. Here today, gone tomorrow.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

- A: sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj kàp sathǎanthûut aᅇkrìt 'The American Embassy is near the British Embassy.'
- B: sathǎanthûut ameerikan kàp sathǎanthûut aᅇkrìt jùu klâj kan 'The American Embassy and the British Embassy are close to each other.'

- c) The extent of the distance between two places can be indicated by constructions like the following:

NP <sup>1</sup>	Verb Phrase	NP <sup>2</sup>	Extent of distance
krunthêep	jùu klaj càak	chianᅇmàj	kìi kiloo
krunthêep	jùu klaj càak	chianᅇmàj	900 kiloo

'How far (how many kilometers) is Bangkok from Chiangmai?'

'Bangkok is 900 kilometers from Chiangmai.'

- d) mii has the meaning 'to be in existence' in constructions like the one below:

Location (optional)	<u>mii</u>	NP Complement
(thěsw níi)	mii	ráantàtphǎm

'In this area (there) is a barber shop.'

There is no subject of the sentence.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 14.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drills

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. ráantàtphǒm	thěswníi mii <u>ráantàtphǒm</u> máj khráp Is there a barber shop in this area?
2. ráantàtsŷa	thěswníi mii <u>ráantàtsŷa</u> máj khráp Is there a tailor shop in this area?
3. ráankhǎaj nánsŷyphim	thěswníi mii <u>ráankhǎaj nánsŷyphim</u> máj Is there a newstand in this area? ?
4. pámnámman	thěswníi mii <u>pámnámman</u> máj khráp Is there a gas pump in this area?
5. thoorasàp sǎathaaraná	thěswníi mii <u>thoorasàp sǎathaaraná</u> máj khráp Is there a public telephone in this area?
6. ráanmǔo	thěswníi mii <u>ráanmǔo</u> máj khráp Is there a doctor's place in this area?
7. ráankhǎaj jaa	thěswníi mii <u>ráankhǎaj jaa</u> máj khráp Is there a pharmacy in this area?
8. ráanaahǎan diidii	thěswníi mii <u>ráanaahǎan dii dii</u> máj khráp Are there good restaurants in this area?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. ráantàtphǒm	thěswnii mii <u>ráantàtphǒm</u> máj Are there any barber shops in the area?
2. thaan̄ khwǎa	<u>thaan̄khwǎa</u> mii ráantàtphǒm máj Are there any barbershops to the right?
3. thīi hooten	<u>thīi hooten</u> mii ráantàtphǒm máj Are there any barbershops at the hotel?
4. thoorasàp	thīi hooten mii <u>thoorasàp</u> máj Are there telephones at the hotel?
5. thīin̄fi	<u>thīin̄fi</u> mii thoorasàp máj Are there telephones here?
6. aahǎan faràn̄ khǎaj	thīin̄fi mii <u>aahǎan faràn̄ khǎaj</u> máj Is there foreign food for sale here?
7. thīi ráan nán	<u>thīi ráan nán</u> mii aahǎan faràn̄ khǎaj máj Is there foreign food for sale at that shop?
8. thěsw nán	<u>thěsw nán</u> mii aahǎan faràn̄ khǎaj máj Is there foreign food for sale in this area?
9. ráankaafɛɛ	thěsw nán mii <u>ráankaafɛɛ</u> máj Are there coffee shops around here?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. klâj klâj (kàp)      klâj klâj (kàp) thîithamṇaan mii ráankaafæe  
       thîithamṇaan      máj

Are there coffee shops near the office?

### c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. pratau náam	juusôm jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is U.S.O.M?	jùu (thîi) <u>pratau náam</u> khráp On Pratunam.
2. doon myaṇ	sanǎambin <u>doon myaṇ</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's Don Muang airport?	jùu thîi <u>doon myaṇ</u> khráp At Don Muang.
3. saphaan khwaaj	roonræem késeppitôm jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's the Capitol Hotel?	jùu (thîi) <u>saphaan</u> <u>khwaaj</u> khráp At the Water Buffalo bridge.
4. sîijêek pathumwan	sanǎam kiilaa jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's the Sports Stadium?	jùu (thîi) <u>sîijêek</u> <u>pathumwan</u> At Pathumwan Corner.
5. baan̄kapi	bâan khun jùu thîi nǎj Where's your house?	jùu <u>baan̄kapi</u> At Bangkapi.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

Cue Words: bân khun.... baan kapì

Student 1: bân khun jùu thîinǎj      Where's your house?  
khráp

Student 2: jùu baan kapì khráp      In Bangkok.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sanǎam kiilaa, thěew sîijêek pathumwan	sanǎam kiilaa jùu thîinǎj  Where's the Sport Stadium?	jùu (thîi) thěew sîijêek pathumwan  Near Pathumwan Corner.
2. juusôm, pratuunám	juusôm jùu thîinǎj  Where is USOM?	jùu thîi pratuunám  At Pratunam.
3. bân khun, klâj klâj (kàp) anúsáawarii	bân khun jùu thîinǎj  Where's your house?	jùu klâj klâj (kàp) anúsáawarii  Quite close to the monument.
4. roonrëem kěepitôn, saphaan khwaaj	roonrëem kěepitôn jùu thîinǎj  Where's the Capitol Hotel?	jùu (thîi) saphaan khwaaj  Near the Water Buffalo Bridge.
5. sanǎambin dôn myan, dôn myan	sanǎambin dôn myan jùu thîinǎj  Where's Don Muang Airport?	jùu (thîi) dôn myan  At Don Muang.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Substitution Drill (Use street chart on next page)

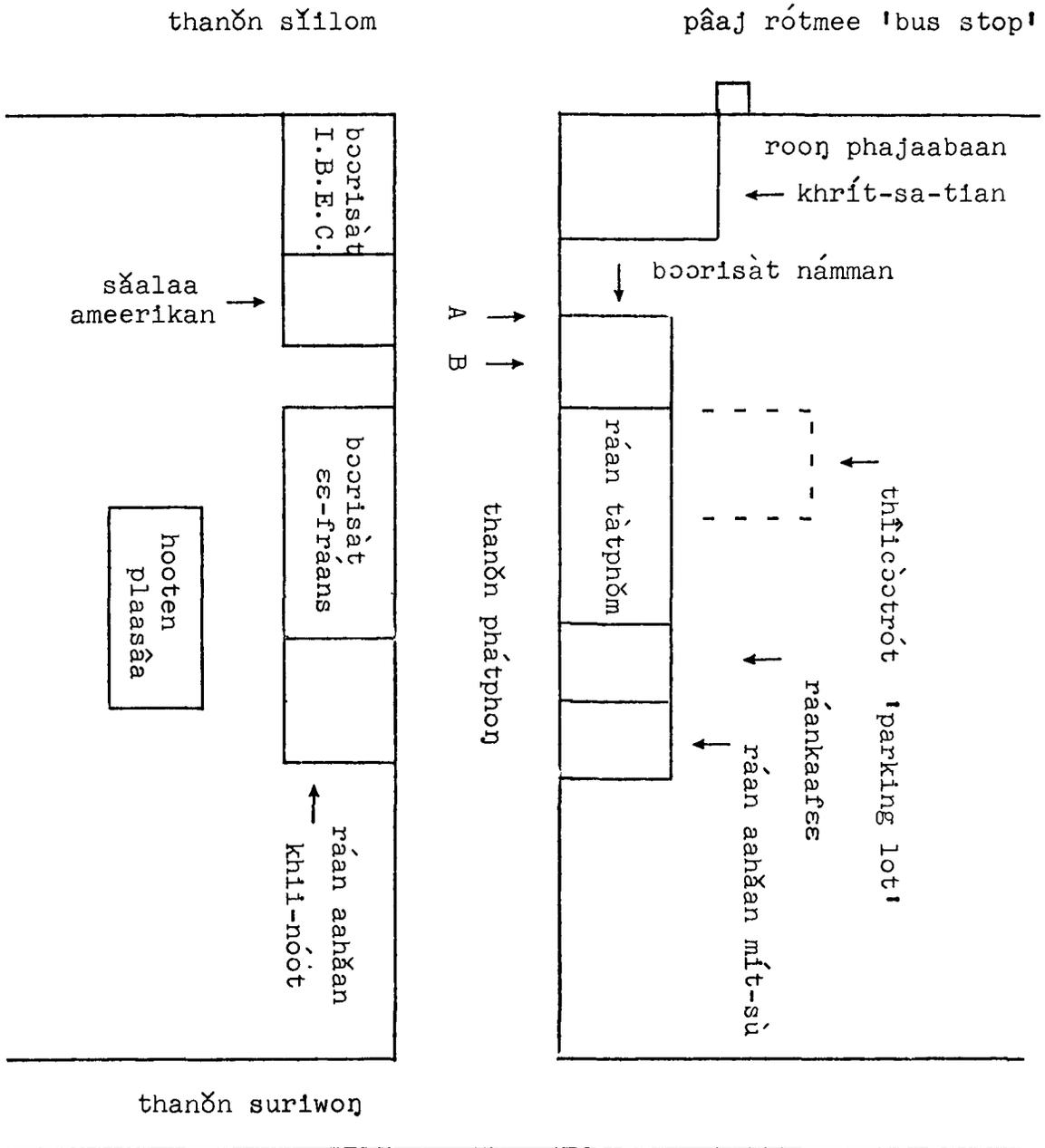
<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. khwǎa	<u>ráantàtphǒm jùu thaankhwǎa</u> The barber shop is to the right.
2. ráanaahǎan	<u>ráanaahǎan jùu thaankhwǎa</u> The restaurant is to the right.
3. bǒorisàt námman	<u>bǒorisàt námman jùu thaankhwǎa</u> The oil company is on the right.
4. thanǒn suriwong	<u>thanǒn suriwong jùu thaankhwǎa</u> Suriwong street is on the right.
5. hooten plaasâa	<u>hooten plaasâa jùu thaankhwǎa</u> The Plaza Hotel is on the right.

### f) Substitution Drill (Use street chart on next page)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. sáaj	<u>roongphajaabaan jùu thaansáaj</u> The hospital is to the left.
2. thanǒn sǐilom	<u>thanǒn sǐilom jùu thaansáaj</u> Silom Street is to the left.
3. bǒorisàt aj-bèk	<u>bǒorisàt aj-bèk jùu thaansáaj</u> I.B.E.C. is on the left.

Continue the drill with additional examples from the map on the next page.

THAI BASIC COURSE



g) Expansion Drill (Combine the cue words to form place expressions)

Cue:	Cue:	Pattern	
nǐi	thîi	thîinii	here
nân	thîi	thîinân	there
nôn	thîi	thîinôn	way over there

h) Response Drill

Cue

- |    |      |                                  |   |
|----|------|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. | nīi  | bāan khun jùu thīinǎj            | (bāan phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nīi</u>            |
|    |      | Where's your house?              | It's here.                                  |
| 2. | nān  | sathǎanthūut jùu thīinǎj         | (sathǎanthūut) jùu thīin <u>nān</u>         |
|    |      | Where's the Embassy?             | It's there.                                 |
| 3. | nōon | sīijêesk rāatprasǒŋ jùu thīinǎj  | (sīijêesk rāatprasǒŋ) jùu thīin <u>nōon</u> |
|    |      | Where's Ratprasong Intersection? | It's way over there.                        |
| 4. | nīi  | phyan khun jùu thīinǎj           | (phyan phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nīi</u>           |
|    |      | Where's your friend?             | (My friend) is here.                        |
| 5. | nān  | nānsȳy khun jùu thīinǎj         | (nānsȳy phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nān</u>         |
|    |      | Where's your book?               | It's there.                                 |
| 6. | nōon | rót jùu thīinǎj                  | (rót) jùu thīin <u>nōon</u>                 |
|    |      | Where's the car?                 | It's way over there.                        |

i) Expansion Drill (Combine the cue words to form place expressions.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
1.	nīi	tron	tron nīi right here
2.	nán	tron	tron nán right there
3.	nóon	tron	tron nóon right over there
4.	nīi	thěew	thěew nīi (in) this section
5.	nán	thěew	thěew nán (in) that section

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. n'oon    th'ɛw    th'ɛw n'oon    (in) that section over there  
 7. n'ii    f'anj    f'anj n'ii    (on) this side (of the street)  
 8. n'oon    f'anj    f'anj n'oon    (on) the far side (of the street)

j) Response Drill (Have one student form a question from cue 1, and another respond to it using cue 2.)

<u>Cue 1</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Cue 2</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. th'i	th'inǎj Where?	n'i	th'infi Here.
2. tron	tronǎj (Exactly) where?	n'ii	tronfi Right here.
3. th'ɛw	th'ɛwnǎj (in) which section?	n'oon	th'ɛwn'oon (In) that section.
4. f'anj	f'anjǎj Which side?	n'ii	f'anjfi This side.
5. th'i	th'inǎj Where?	n'on	th'in'on Way over there
6. tron	tronǎj (Exactly) where?	n'oon	tron'oon Right over there.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- k) Response Drill (Have one student form a question with the first cue, and a second student respond to it using the second cue.)

### Cue

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 1. ráanaahǎan,<br>thaanǵhwǎa                        | ránaahǎan jùu<br>thǐinǎj<br>Where's the<br>restaurant?          | ránaahǎan jùu<br>thaanǵhwǎa khráp<br>It's on the right.                             |
| 2. ráantàtphǒm,<br>thaansáaj                        | rántàtphǒm jùu<br>thǐinǎj<br>Where's the barber<br>shop?        | rántàtphǒm jùu<br>thaansáaj khráp<br>It's on the left.                              |
| 3. roonrɛɛm eerawan,<br>thɛɛw sǐijɛɛk<br>râatprasǒŋ | roonrɛɛm eerawan<br>jùu thǐinǎj<br>Where's the Erawan<br>Hotel? | roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu<br>thɛɛw sǐijɛɛk râatprasǒŋ<br>It's Ratprasong<br>Corner area. |
| 4. talàat,<br>tronǵnóon                             | talàat jùu thǐinǎj<br>Where's the market?                       | talàat jùu tronǵnóon<br>It's right over there.                                      |

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klaj càak krasuanǵtǎan prathêet.  
The American Embassy is far from the Foreign Ministry.
2. roonrɛɛm kɛɛp-pi-tǒon jùu klaj càak cátsamɛɛk  
The Capitol Hotel is far from JUSMAG.
3. sanǎambin doon myan jùu klaj càak juusít  
Don Muang Airport is far from USIS.

4. phii-éks jùu klaj càak juusôm  
The PX is far from USOM.
5. talàat jùu klaj càak bâan phôm.  
The market is far from my house.
6. sathăanii rôt faj jùu klaj càak bâan kháw  
The R.R. station is far from his house.
7. hôn aahăan jùu klaj càak hôn rian.  
The dining room is far from the classroom.

m) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. sathăanthût jùu klaj càak  
krasuan tàan prathêet  
The Embassy is far from  
the Foreign Ministry.
2. doon myan jùu klaj càak  
sathăanthût  
Don Muang is far from  
the Embassy.
3. roonrëem orianten jùu klaj  
càak roonrëem eerawan  
The Oriental Hotel is far  
from the Erawan Hotel.

Pattern 2

- sathăanthût kàp krasuan  
tàan prathêet jùu klaj kan.  
The Embassy and the Foreign  
Ministry are far apart.
- doon myan kàp sathăanthût  
jùu klaj kan.  
Don Muang and the Embassy  
are far apart.
- roonrëem orianten kàp roonrëem  
eerawan jùu klaj kan.  
The Oriental Hotel and the  
Erawan Hotel are far apart.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>4. bân phǒm jùu klaj càak<br/>bân khun<br/>My house is far from<br/>your house.</p>                                | <p>bân phǒm kabân khun jùu<br/>klaj kan<br/>My house and your house<br/>are far apart.</p>                                  |
| <p>5. caṅwàt sǒṅkhlǎa jùu klaj<br/>càak caṅwàt udǒon<br/>Songkla Province is far<br/>from Udorn Province.</p>         | <p>caṅwàt sǒṅkhlǎa kàp caṅwàt<br/>udǒon jùu klaj kan<br/>Songkla Province and Udorn<br/>Province are far apart.</p>         |
| <p>6. thanǒn wítthajú jùu klaj<br/>càak thanǒn phahǒnjoothin<br/>Wireless Road is far from<br/>Paholyotin Street.</p> | <p>thanǒn wítthajú kàp thanǒn<br/>phahǒnjoothin jùu klaj kan<br/>Wireless Road and Paholyotin<br/>Street are far apart.</p> |

### n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. prajsanii (no)	prajsanii jùu klaj càak nǐi máj Is the Post Office far from here?	mâj klaj khráp No, it isn't.
2. krasuaṅ tàaṅ prathêet (yes)	krasuaṅ tàaṅprathêet jùu klaj càak nǐi máj Is the Foreign Ministry far from here?	klaj khráp Yes, it is.
3. sanǎambin dǒon myaṅ (no)	sanǎambin dǒon myaṅ jùu klaj càak nǐi máj Is Don Muang Airport far from here?	mâj klaj khráp No, it isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. juusôm (yes)      juusôm jùu klaj càak      klaj khráp  
nîi máj  
Is USOM far from here?      Yes, it is.
5. hôn prachum      hôn prachum jùu klaj càak      mâj klaj khráp  
(no)      nîi máj  
Is the auditorium far      No, it isn't.  
from here?
6. thanakhaan      thanakhaan jùu klaj càak      klaj khráp  
(yes)      nîi máj  
Is the bank far from here?      Yes, it is.
7. sathăanii      sathăanii tamrùat jùu klaj      klaj khráp  
tamrùat      càak nîi máj  
Is the Police Station      Yes, it is.  
far from here?
8. prathêet      prathêet farànsèet jùu klaj      klaj khráp  
farànsèet (yes)      càak nîi máj  
Is France far from here?      Yes, it is.

### o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathăanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj kàp roonrēm eerawan  
The American Embassy is near the Erawan Hotel.
2. cátsamèek jùu klâj kàp juusít.  
JUSMAG is near USIS.
3. sîijêek rāatprasōn jùu klâj kàp thanōn wítthajú.  
The Ratprasong Intersection is near Wireless Road.

4. thonburii jùu klâj kàp krunthêep  
Thonburi is near Bangkok.
5. sapòot khláp jùu klâj kàp culaa.  
The Sports Club is near Chula.
6. sanăam lŭan jùu klâj kàp thammasàat  
The Pramane Grounds are near Thammasart (University).
7. bân phôm jùu klâj kàp talàat  
My house is near the market.

Note to the instructor: Repeat the drill using ka- for kàp.

p) Substitution Drill

Cue

1. talàat                      bân kháv jùu klâj talàat  
His house is near the market.
2. roonphajabaan            bân kháv jùu klâj roonphajabaan.  
His house is near the hospital.
3. thanŏn sŭilom            bân kháv jùu klâj thanŏn sŭilom  
His house is near Silom Street.
4. hŏnsamùt                bân kháv jùu klâj hŏnsamùt  
His house is near the library.
5. thŭithamŋaan            bân kháv jùu klâj thŭithamŋaan  
His house is near the office.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. hooten ramâa      bâan kháw jùu klâj hooten ramâa  
His house is near Rama Hotel.
7. thanǒn jàj      bâan kháw jùu klâj thanǒn jàj  
His house is near the main street.
8. roonṅaan      bâan kháw jùu klâj roonṅaan  
His house is near the factory.
9. tua muan      bâan kháw jùu klâj tua muan  
His house is near down town.

### q) Sentence Formation Drill

#### Cue

1. talàat, thĭithamṅaan      talàat jùu klâj thĭithamṅaan máj  
Is the market near the office?
2. bâan khun, bâan khun      bâan khun jùu klâj bâan khun thǎawoon máj  
thǎawoon  
Is your house near Thaworn's?
3. thĭithamṅaan khun,      thĭithamṅaan khun jùu klâj prajsanii máj  
prajsanii  
Is your office near the Post Office?
4. sathǎanthûut      sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj juusôm máj  
ameerikan, juusôm  
Is the American Embassy near USOM?
5. krunthêep, ajúthajaa      krunthêep jùu klâj ajúthajaa máj  
Is Bangkok near Ayuthaya?
6. prathêet jĭipùn,      prathêet jĭipùn jùu klâj prathêet  
prathêet jæraman      jæraman máj  
Is Japan near Germany?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### r) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. cátsamèk jùu klâj kàp  
juusít

JUSMAG is near USIS.

2. sathǎanthûut óossatreelia  
jùu klâj kàp sathǎanthûut  
filíppin

The Australian Embassy  
is near the Philippine  
Embassy.

3. roonrɛɛm ammarin jùu klâj  
kàp roonrɛɛm eerawan

The Amarin Hotel is near  
the Erawan Hotel.

4. juusɔɔm jùu klâj kàp talàat  
pratuunám

USOM is near the Pratunam  
Market.

5. ee-juu-ee jùu klâj kàp  
roonrɛɛm eerawan

A.U.A. is near the Erawan  
Hotel.

6. wɔɔchɪntân jùu klâj kàp  
wəə-ci-nia

Washington is near Virginia.

#### Pattern 2

- cátsamèk kàp júusít jùu  
klâj kan

JUSMAG and USIS are near  
each other.

- sathǎanthûut óossatreelia kàp  
sathǎanthûut filíppin jùu  
klâj kan.

The Australian Embassy and  
the Philippine Embassy are  
near each other.

- roonrɛɛm ammarin kàp roonrɛɛm  
eerawan jùu klâj kan

The Amarin Hotel and the  
Erawan Hotel are near  
each other.

- juusɔɔm kàp talàat pratuunám  
jùu klâj kan

USOM and the Pratunam Market  
are close together.

- ee-juu-ee kàp roonrɛɛm eerawan  
jùu klâj kan

The A.U.A. and the Erawan  
Hotel are close together.

- wɔɔchɪntân kàp wəə-cinia jùu  
klâj kan

Washington and Virginia are  
close together.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### s) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. ráanaahǎan jùu thaankhwǎa

The restaurant is on  
the right.

2. bǎan khǒŋ kháw jùu thǐinôn

His house is over there.

3. talàat jùu thaansáaj

The market is to the left.

4. prajsanii jùu tronón

The P.O. is right over there.

5. sathǎanthûut jùu thaansáaj

The Embassy is to the left.

6. nánsŷy khǒŋkhun jùu thǐinôn

Your book is over there.

7. sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thǐi  
thanón nón

The USIS auditorium is on  
the street over there.

#### Pattern 2

ráanaahǎan mâj dâj jùu  
thaansáaj

The restaurant is not  
on the left.

bǎan khǒŋ kháw mâj dâj jùu  
thǐinǐi

His house isn't here.

talàat mâj dâj jùu thaankhwǎa

The market is not to the right.

prajsanii mâj dâj jùu tronǐi

The P.O. is not right here.

sathǎanthûut mâj dâj jùu  
thaankhwǎa

The Embassy is not to the  
right.

nánsŷy khǒŋ khun mâj dâj jùu  
thǐinǐi

Your book isn't here.

sǎalaa ameerikan mâj dâj  
jùu thǐi thanón nǐi

The USIS auditorium is not  
on this street.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### t) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. ráanaahǎan jùu thaanǵhwǎa

The restaurant is on the right.

2. hooten jùu thaansáaj

The hotel is to the left.

3. bâan khǵonǵhǎw jùu thǵewnóon

His house is in the area over there.

4. rót khǵon phǵm jùu tronǵníi

My car is right here.

5. talàat jùu thaansáaj

The market is on the left.

#### Pattern 2

ránaahǎan jùu thaanǵhwǎa,  
mâj chǎj thaansáaj

The restaurant is on the right. It's not on the left.

hooten jùu thaansáaj, mâj  
chǎj thaanǵhwǎa

The hotel is to the left. It's not to the right.

bâan khǵonǵhǎw jùu thǵewnóon,  
mâj chǎj thǵewníi

His house is in the area over there. It's not in this area.

rót khǵon phǵm jùu tronǵníi,  
mâj chǎj tronǵnóon

My car is right here.

talàat jùu thaansáaj, mâj  
chǎj thaanǵhwǎa

The market is on the left. It isn't on the right.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

u) Transformation Drill (Change to the Negative.)

Pattern 1

1. roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu klâj  
ka sathǎanthûut  
The Erawan Hotel is  
near the Embassy.
2. roonrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu klâj  
ka prajsaniklaan  
The Oriental Hotel is near  
the Central Post Office.
3. sathǎanthûut sapeen jùu klâj  
ka sathǎanthûut ameerikan  
The Spanish Embassy is  
near the American Embassy.
4. cátsamèek jùu klâj ka juusít  
JUSMAG is near USIS.
5. slijêek sàpràthum jùu klâj  
ka slijêek râatprasǎn  
Sapratum Corner is near  
Ratprasong Corner.

Pattern 2

1. roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu mâj  
klaj càak sathǎanthûut  
The Erawan Hotel is not  
far from the Embassy.
2. roonrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu mâj  
klaj càak prajsaniklaan  
The Oriental Hotel is not  
far from the Central Post  
Office.
3. sathǎanthûut sapeen jùu mâj  
klaj càak sathǎanthûut  
ameerikan  
The Spanish Embassy is not  
far from the American  
Embassy.
4. cátsamèek jùu mâj klaj càak  
juusít  
JUSMAG is not far from USIS.
5. slijêek sàpràthum jùu mâj klaj  
càak slijêek râatprasǎn  
Sapratum Corner is not far  
from Ratprasong Corner.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 14.3 EXERCISES

- a) Find out if any of the following things are in this area: barber shop, bank, restaurant, Post Office, gas pump, oil company, public telephone, pharmacy, coffee shop, hospital, railroad station, airport, police station.
- b) Starting from some particular spot (in front of a bank, etc.) find out where other buildings are in relation (to the left, right over there, etc.) to your position.
- c) Using the map following page 133, discuss what places are near each other and which are far apart in Bangkok.
- d) Using the map following page 112 discuss what provinces are near each other and which are far apart.
- e) Ask other students if particular buildings are near their homes.
- f) Ask where particular buildings are located. In the answer you will be told that they are near other buildings.

### 14.4 VOCABULARY

aj bək (bɔrisət)	I.B.E.C., Name of a company
ammarin	Amarin, name of a hotel in Bangkok
anúsǎwarii (hèn)	monument
εε fráans	Air France, name of an airline
ɔɔrianten	Oriental, name of a hotel in Bangkok
baɔŋkapi	Bangkapı (section of Bangkok)
bɔɔrisət	company
bɔɔrisət námman	Oil Company
fàn	side (of the street/river/canal/sea)
hôn aahǎan (hôn)	dining room
hooten	hotel

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

jaa	medicine
jàj	big, large
kéepitôon	The Capitol (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
khâaŋ	next to ( something or someone), side
khiinóot	keynote (name)
khrítsatian	Christian (name of a hospital)
klaj	to be far
klâj	to be near, close
mít su	Mitsu (name of a restaurant)
pâaj (pâaj)	poster, sign, tag
pâaj rótmee (pâaj)	bus stop
pámnámman	a gas pump
pathumwan	Patoomwan, (section of Bangkok)
phàan	to pass, to go past
phahǒnjoothin	Phaholyotin Street in Bangkok
plaasâa	Plaza, name of a hotel in Bangkok
prajsanii klaaŋ	The Central Post Office
pratuunám	Pratunam (name of the section in Bangkok)
ráankhǎaj-	
náŋsýyphim (ráan)	a newstand
ráan khǎajjaa (ráan)	a pharmacy
ráanmǎo (ráan)	a doctor's office
ráantàtphǒm (ráan)	a barber shop
ráantàtsýa (ráan)	a tailor shop
râatprasǒŋ	Ratprasong (section of Bangkok)
rooŋŋaan (rooŋ)	factory
rótmee (khan)	bus
sǎalaa ameerikan	the USIS Auditorium
sǎathaaraná	public (not private)
sanǎam (hèn)	field, yard, lawn

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sanăam kilaa (hèn)	the sports stadium
sanăam lŭaŋ (hèn)	the Pramane Grounds in Bangkok
saphaan (saphaan, an)	bridge (a structure)
saphaan khwaaj (saphaan, an)	the Water Buffalo Bridge (name of a bridge in Bangkok)
sàpràthum	Saprathum (name of the corner and section in Bangkok)
sathăanii tamrùat (hèn)	police station
sìijêek	corner
sĭilom	Silom (name of the street in Bangkok)
thaaŋ	way, path, direction, means
thaaŋ khwăa	to the right
thaaŋsáaj	to the left
thanŏn jàj	the main street
thĭi	at
thĭi còot rót (thĭi)	parking lot
thĭinôn	way over there
thĕew	section, district (of a town)
thonburii	Thonburii, Name of a province in Thailand, used to be the capital during the year 1767 through 1782
tron	right, exactly
tron (năj)	(exactly) where

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON FIFTEEN

### 15.0 BASIC DIALOG: An Interview at Korat.

- A: sawàtdii khráp, phǒm chýy thoom      Hello, my name is Tom.  
B: phǒm chýy méen khráp      My name is Maen.
- A: jindii thîi dâj rúucàk      Glad to meet you.  
B: khun pen thahǎan rǎkhráp      You're a soldier, aren't you?
- A: plàaw khráp      No, I'm not.  
    phǒm pen phonlaryan      I'm a civilian.  
B: khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèŋ mâak      You speak Thai very well.
- A: khòpkhun khráp      Thank you.  
B: khun maa tham araj thîinii khráp      What did you come here to do?
- A: phǒm maa thamŋaan thîi juusít      To work at USIS.  
    khráp
- B: khǒothôot, khun mii khròpkhrua      Do you have a family?  
    léew rýjaŋ khráp
- A: mii léew khráp, tè weelaanîi,      I do, but at present  
    phǒm jùu khondiaw      I live by myself.
- B: thammaj lâ khráp, phanrajaa ka      Why? Are your wife and  
    lûuklûuk khǒoŋ khun jùu thîi      children in America?  
    ameerikaa rǎkhráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- A: plàaw khráp  
kháw jaŋ jùu thîi krunthêep, phró  
kòon thîi phóm ca maa thîinîi,  
phóm thamnaan thîi krunthêep
- B: khun mii bùt kîi khon khráp
- A: sǒŋ khon khráp
- B: phûujǐŋ rý phûuchaaŋ khráp
- A: khontoo pen phûujǐŋ, khonlék  
pen phûuchaaŋ
- B: aajú thâwraŋ khráp
- A: khontoo aajú sǐp khùap,  
khonlék aajú hâa khùap
- B: rian náŋsǎy thîinǎj khráp
- A: lûuk phóm rǎkhráp  
khonnyn rian thîi roonrian  
naanaachâat, ìik khonnyn jaŋ  
mâj rian náŋsǎy
- B: roonrian naanaachâat pen roonrian  
khǒŋ ameerikan, châj máj khráp
- A: châj khráp  
tèe kháw mii khruu lé nákrían  
châat òyn òyn lǎaj khon
- B: roonrian níi jùu thîinǎj khráp
- No, they aren't.  
They're still in Bangkok,  
because before I came here  
I worked in Bangkok.
- How many children do  
you have?
- Two.
- Girls or boys?
- The oldest is a girl;  
the youngest, a boy.
- What ages?
- The oldest is 10; the  
youngest is 5.
- Where do they go to  
school?
- My children?
- One goes to the Inter-  
national School; the  
other doesn't go to  
school yet.
- The International School  
is the American School,  
isn't it?
- Yes, it is.
- But they have many  
teachers and students  
of other nationalities.
- Where is that school?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- A: jùu thîi sɔɔj rûamcaj, thanɔn  
sukhũmwít khráp                      It's at Ruamchaj Lane  
Sukhumwit Road.
- B: phǒm jan mâj khəej paj sǎmnáknaan  
juusít læej, jùu thîinǎj khráp                      I've never been to (the  
USIS (office). Where  
is it?
- A: jùu klâjklâj katalàat khráp.wanlǎj  
wanlǎj chəen paj jîam raw  
bâan nakhráp                      It's quite close to the  
market. Why don't you  
come over and visit us  
some day?
- B: khòɔpkhun khráp                      Thank you.  
thîithamnaan khǒɔkhun pèet  
kìi moon khráp                      When does your office  
open?
- A: hɔ̄nsamùt pèet weelaa thîan,  
pít raaw nỳnthũm tɛs phǒm khâw  
thamnaan weelaa sǒɔj moon khrỳj,  
lêek hâa moon jen                      The library opens at  
noon, (and) closes  
around 7 p.m. but I  
begin at 8.30 a.m.,  
and quit at 5 p.m.
- B: nán, wanlǎj phǒm ca paj jîam khun.  
phǒm laa kòon nakhráp.  
ca rîip paj thúra                      Then someday I'll go  
visit you. I'll say  
'Goodbye'. I have  
urgent business (to  
take care of).
- A: khráp                      All right.  
wǎj wâa raw khon dâj phóp kan ìik                      I hope we'll meet again.

### 15.1 QUESTIONS ON THE INTERVIEW

- a) khun thoom phóp khraj
- b) kháw khəej rúucàk kan máj
- c) khun thoom pen khraj
- d) khun thoom tɛnnaan lésw rýjan

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- e) weelaaníi khun thoóm jùu kakhraj, thammaj
- f) thammaj phanrajaa kalûuklûuk khǒŋkháw jaŋ jùu thîi krunthêep
- g) lûuk khontoo khǒŋkhun thoóm aajú thâwràj
- h) kháw rian nánsýy thîinǎj
- i) roonrian naanaachâat mii khon châat ÿyn ÿyn máj
- j) sǎmnáknaan juusít thîi khorâat jùu klaj càak talàat máj
- k) khun thoóm khâw thamnaan kîi moon
- l) kháw lêek naan kîi moon
- m) hŋsamùt pèet kîi moon, pít kîi moon
- n) khun méen ca rîip paj nǎj

### 15.2 EXERCISES

One student will take the part of a Thai and will interview another student who will take the part of an American who has just arrived in a provincial city in Thailand for duty. The interview should follow the general format of the one in 15.0 but additional material may be included. As far as possible, all information given should be correct. The other students in the class should take notes on the interview and be prepared to answer questions about the information contained in it.

### 15.3 VOCABULARY

jîam	to visit
khâw	to begin (to work, to learn), enter
khon (ca)	probably
laa	to say goodbye (said only by person leaving)
lêek	quit, finish, to be over or through
méen	Maen (male or female first name)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phró	because
raaw	around, about
rîip	to hurry, to be urgent
roonriian naanaachâat (roonriian)	The International School
rûam caj	Ruam chaj (name of lane on Sukhumwit Road)
sămnáknaan (hèn)	office (of an agency, etc.)
sooj	lane (narrow street)
sukhŭmwít	Sukhumwit Road
thoom	Tom (a name)
thammaj	why (question word)
wanlăŋ	some day (in the future)
wăŋ	to hope
weelaaníi	at present

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON SIXTEEN

### 16.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (2)

- A: khǎothôot khráp, prajsanii klaan paj thaanǎj Excuse me, which way is the main Post Office?
- B: tron paj khâanâa khráp Straight ahead.
- A: khòopkhun khráp Thank you.

(10 minutes later)

- A: khǎothôot khráp, nîi prajsanii klaan, châj máj Excuse me, this is the main Post Office, isn't it?
- B: châj khráp Yes, it is.
- A: thîsòn thooralêek jùu tronǎj, sâap máj khráp Where's the place to send telegrams, do you know?
- B: jùu khâanaj khráp It's inside.
- A: paj thaanǎj khráp Which way do you go?
- B: dæen tron khâw paj khâanaj, l'èsw líaw khwǎa, thîsòn thooralêek ca jùu thaansáaj (myy) (khǎon) khun Go straight in, then turn right the place to send telegrams will be to your left.
- A: khòopkhun mâak khráp Thank you very much.
- B: mâj pen raj khráp You're welcome.

16.1 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. nánsǎy phǒm jùu naj hǒn<br>My book is in the room.  | nánsǎy phǒm jùu khâanaj<br>My book is inside.   |
| 2. thǎisǒn thooralêek jùu naj tǎk<br>The place to send telegrams<br>is in the building.            | thǎisǒn thooralêek jùu khâanaj<br>The place to send telegrams<br>is inside.           |
| 3. thǎi thamkaan prajsanii jùu<br>naj roonræm<br>The office of the Post<br>Office is in the hotel. | thǎi thamkaan prajsanii jùu<br>khâanaj<br>The office of the Post<br>Office is inside. |
| 4. khruu jùu naj hǒnlèep<br>The teacher is in the lab.   | khruu jùu khâanaj<br>The teacher is inside.   |
| 5. lûuksǎaw phǒm jùu naj hǒn<br>My daughter is in the room.  | lûuksǎaw phǒm jùu khâanaj<br>My daughter is inside.                                   |
| 6. hǒnthabian jùu naj tǎk<br>The registrar's room is<br>in the building.                           | hǒnthabian jùu khâanaj<br>The registrar's room<br>is inside.                          |
| 7. khun wíchaj jùu naj sǎalaa<br>ameerikan<br>Wichai is in the USIS<br>auditorium.                 | khun wíchaj jùu khâanaj<br>Wichai is inside.  |

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. ph̄yan ph̄m j̄u n̄ok h̄n̄rian  
My friend is outside  
the classroom.
2. roon̄r̄ot j̄u n̄ok b̄an  
The garage is outside  
the house.
3. phanrajaa ph̄m j̄u n̄okb̄an  
My wife is outside the  
house.
4. ráanaah̄an j̄u n̄ok t̄yk rian  
The restaurant is outside  
the school building.
5. khruu j̄u n̄ok h̄n̄rian  
The teacher is outside  
the classroom.
6. l̄uuk ph̄m j̄u n̄ok b̄an  
My children are outside  
the house.

Pattern 2

- ph̄yan ph̄m j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
My friend is outside.
- roon̄r̄ot j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
The garage is outside.
- phanrajaa ph̄m j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
My wife is outside.
- ráanaah̄an j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
The restaurant is outside.
- khruu j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
The teacher is outside.
- l̄uuk ph̄m j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
My children are outside.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw jùu nâa raw  
He is in front of us.
2. khruu jùu nâa chán  
The teacher is in front  
of the class.
3. pâajrótmee jùu nâa roonriian  
The bus stop is in front  
of the school.
4. ráanaahǎan jùu nâa hooten  
The restaurant is in  
front of the hotel.
5. rót jùu nâa bâan  
The car is in front of  
the house.

#### Pattern 2

1. kháw jùu khâanǎa  
He is in front.
2. khruu jùu khâanǎa  
The teacher is in front.
3. pâajrótmee jùu khâanǎa  
The bus stop is in front.
4. ráanaahǎan jùu khâanǎa  
The restaurant is in  
front.
5. rót jùu khâanǎa  
The car is in front.

### d) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. thǐi còot rót jùu lǎnǎn bâan  
The parking lot is behind  
the house.
2. kâw íi jùu lǎnǎn chán  
The chairs are in the  
back of the class.

#### Pattern 2

1. thǐi còot rót jùu khâanlǎnǎn  
The parking lot is in  
the back.
2. kâw íi jùu khâanlǎnǎn  
The chairs are in back.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>3. bâan khǒɔŋ kháw jùu lǎŋ hooten<br/>His house is behind the hotel.</p>        | <p>bâan khǒɔŋ kháw jùu khâaŋlǎŋ<br/>His house is behind.</p> |
| <p>4. páam námman jùu lǎŋ sathǎanthûut<br/>The gas pump is behind the Embassy.</p> | <p>pám námman jùu khâaŋlǎŋ<br/>The gas pump is out back.</p> |

### e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khâaŋnâa ahead	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	tron paj khâaŋnâa Go straight ahead.
2. sáaj left	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	paj thaansáaj Go to the left.
3. níi this	paj thaan nǎj Go which way.	paj thaanníi Go this way.
4. khâaŋnâa ahead	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	tron paj khâaŋnâa Go straight ahead.
5. khwǎa right	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	paj thaan khwǎa Go to the right.
6. sáaj left	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	paj thaan sáaj Go to the left.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. māj líaw not turn	tron paj rý líaw Straight ahead or turn?	tron paj Straight ahead.
2. khwǎa right	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa Turn left or turn right?	líaw khwǎa Turn right.
3. sáaj left	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa Turn left or turn right?	líaw sáaj Turn left.
4. māj tron paj not go straight ahead	tron paj rý líaw Go straight ahead or turn?	líaw Turn.
5. māj líaw not turn	tron paj rý líaw Go straight ahead or turn?	tron paj Go straight ahead.
6. khwǎa right	líaw khwǎa rý líaw sáaj Turn right or turn left?	líaw khwǎa Turn right.
7. sáaj left	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa Turn left or turn right?	líaw sáaj Turn left.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. hônriian	kháw kamlan khâw paj naj <u>hônriian</u> He's going into the classroom.
2. bâan khun	kháw kamlan khâw paj naj <u>bâan khun</u> He's going into your house.
3. hônrsamùt	kháw kamlan khâw paj naj <u>hônrsamùt</u> He's going into the library.
4. thanaakhaan	kháw kamlan khâw paj naj <u>thanaakhaan</u> He's going into the bank.
5. prajsanii	kháw kamlan khâw paj naj <u>prajsanii</u> He's going into the Post Office.
6. ráanaahǎan	kháw kamlan khâw paj naj <u>ráanaahǎan</u> He's going into the restaurant.
7. roonrɛɛm	kháw kamlan khâw paj naj <u>roonrɛɛm</u> He's going into the hotel.
8. hônthoorasàp	kháw kamlan khâw paj naj <u>hônthoorasàp</u> He's going into the telephone booth.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw	<u>kháw</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk He's going outside.
2. khruu	<u>khruu</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk The teacher's going outside.
3. nákrían	<u>nákrían</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk The student's going outside.
4. khun ceennîi	<u>khun ceennîi</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk Jenny's going outside.
5. phanrajaa kháw	<u>phanrajaa kháw</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk His wife's going outside.
6. lûuksăaw khǎw kháw	<u>lûuksăaw khǎw kháw</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk His daughter's going outside.
7. phýan dichán (phǎm)	<u>phýan dichán</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk My friend's going outside.
8. khun mǎw	<u>khun mǎw</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk The doctor's going outside.
9. khun	<u>khun</u> kamlan òk paj khâanòk You're going outside.

- i) Substitution Drill (Repeat Drill g, using khâw maa 'come in' for khâw paj 'go in'.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

j) Substitution Drill (Repeat Drill h, using òk maa 'come out' for òk paj 'go out'.)

k) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw	<u>kháw</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has he come out yet?
2. thahǎan	<u>thahǎan</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has the soldier come out yet?
3. mǎo	<u>mǎo</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has the doctor come out yet?
4. khruu	<u>khruu</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has the teacher come out yet?
5. naanphajabaan	<u>naanphajabaan</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has the nurse come out yet?
6. khon ankrít	<u>khon ankrít</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has the Englishman come out yet?
7. phanrajaa kháw	<u>phanrajaa kháw</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has his wife come out yet?
8. lûukchaaj phǎm	<u>lûukchaaj phǎm</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has my son come out yet?
9. sǎamii khun	<u>sǎamii khun</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has your husband come out yet?
10. tamrùat	<u>tamrùat</u> òk maa léew rýjan Has the policeman come out yet?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. no	thahǎan òok maa léew rýjan Has the soldier come out yet?	jan khráp Not yet.
2. yes	mǎo òok maa léew rýjan Has the doctor come out yet?	òok maa léew khráp Yes, he has.
3. no	khruu òok maa léew rýjan Has the teacher come out yet?	jan khráp Not yet.
4. no	lûukchaaj kháw òok maa léew rýjan Has his son come out yet?	jan khráp Not yet.
5. yes	phýankhun òok maa léew rýjan Has your friend come out yet?	òok maa léew khráp Yes, he has.
6. yes	chaawnaa òok maa léew rýjan Has the farmer come out yet?	òok maa léew khráp Yes, he has.

### m) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. yes	kháw khâw paj naj hǎnrían rýplàaw Did he go into the classroom?	khráp, khâw paj Yes, he did.
2. no	kháw khâw paj naj roonphajabaan rýplàaw Did he go into the hospital?	plàaw khráp No, he didn't.
3. no	kháw khâw paj naj thanakhaan rýplàaw Did he go into the bank?	plàaw khráp No, he didn't.
4. yes	kháw khâw paj naj ráanaahǎan rýplàaw Did he go into the restaurant?	khráp, khâw paj Yes, he did.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. no      kháw khâw paj naj sathăanthûut      plàaw khráp  
             ameerikan rýplàaw  
             Did he go into the American Embassy?      No, he didn't.
6. yes     kháw khâw paj naj sathăanii      khráp, khâw paj  
             tamrùat rýplàaw  
             Did he go into the police station?      Yes, he did.

### n) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. prajsanii jùu tron paj khâanăa, phôm            khuan ca dœn tron paj rý líaw            If the Post Office is straight            ahead, should I go straight or            turn?</p>	<p>dœn tron paj khráp            Go straight ahead.</p>
<p>2. ráanaahăan jùu thaan khwăa, phôm khuan            ca líaw paj thaanăj            If the restaurant is to the right,            which way should I turn?</p>	<p>líaw paj thaan khwăa            khráp            Turn to the right.</p>
<p>3. roonrian jùu thaan sáaj, phôm khuan            ca líaw paj thaanăj            If the school is to the left,            which way should I turn?</p>	<p>líaw paj thaan sáaj            khráp            Turn to the left.</p>
<p>4. sathăanii rótfaj jùu tron paj khâanăa,            phôm khuan ca líaw paj thaanăj            If the train station is straight            ahead, which way should I turn?</p>	<p>dœn tron paj khráp            Go straight ahead.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 16.2 EXERCISES

a) Have students take turns playing the following roles:

Student : Goes in and out of the classroom.

Student : Who is sitting in the classroom, describes what Student A is doing ('He is going out of the classroom, he is coming in (to) the classroom', etc.)

Student : Who is standing outside the classroom, also says what student A is doing.

b) Have students take turns playing the following roles.

Student : Goes in and out of the classroom.

Student : Asks Student C questions about Student A's actions (for example, 'Has he gone out of the classroom yet?, etc.) (Both Student B and C are in the classroom).

Student : Responds to Student B's questions according to where Student A is at the time.

c) Repeat exercise (b) with Student B and C standing outside the classroom.

d) Ask various students to give directions to places in the neighborhood starting from where they are.

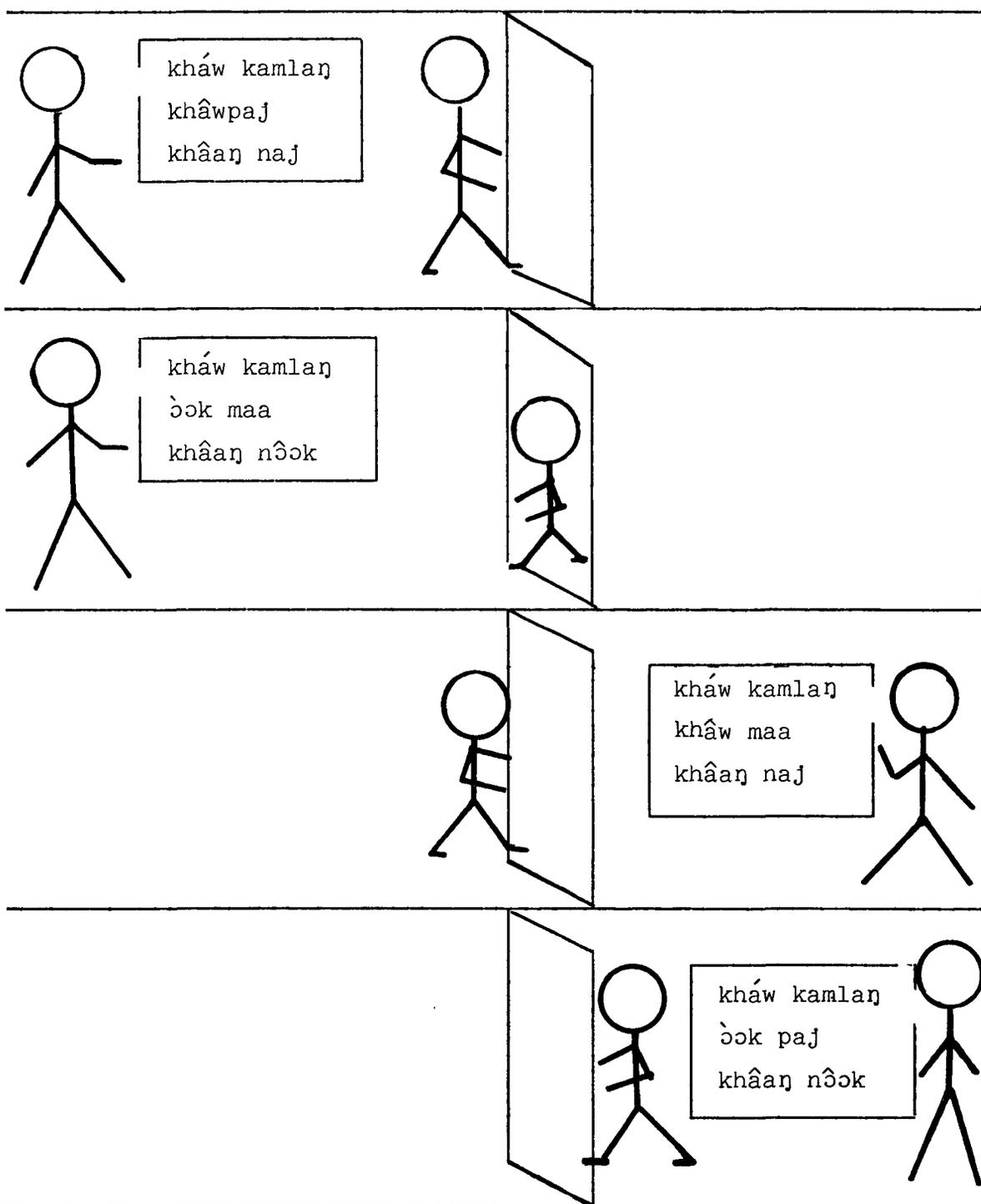
e) Starting from specific places in the neighborhood, ask how you go to get to other specific places. (For Example, 'I'm at X. Which way do I go to get to Y,' etc.)

16.3 VOCABULARY

òok / maa	come out
paj	go out
chán	class
dæen	to walk
hôn̄thoorasàp (hôn̄)	telephone booth
khâanlǎn	the back, behind
khâan̄nâa	ahead, in front
khâan̄naj	inside
khâan̄nòok	outside
khuan ca	should
lǎn	behind
líaw	to turn
myy	hand
nâa	in front; face
nòok	outside
araj	what (question word)
roon̄rót (roon̄)	garage, carport
sâap	to know (a fact)
thaan̄	way, path, direction
thîisòn̄ thooralêek	the place to send telegrams
thîi thamkaan	the office
thooralêek	telegram
tron̄	straight
tỳk (lǎn)	building

# THAI BASIC COURSE

Chart illustrating use of khâw paj 'go in', òok maa 'come out', khâw maa 'come in', and òok paj 'go out'.



# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON SEVENTEEN

### 17.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (3)

- A: khǒothôot khráp  
khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
roonrɛɛm prɛsɪdɛn jùu thɪnǎj
- B: thɪi thanǒn keesǒn khráp
- A: paj thaan nǎj khráp
- B: dɛən tron paj thaan níi  
thýn sɪjɛk  
khâam thanǒn paj  
léɛw dɛən paj thaankhwǎa  
hooten ca jùu thaansáaj my
- A: jùu tron kan khâam kàp roonrɛɛm  
eerawan, châj máj khráp
- B: jùu jyan kan nòj khráp
- Excuse me,  
do you know where the  
President Hotel is?
- It's on Gaysorn street.
- Which direction is it?
- Go straight this way  
to the corner  
cross the street,  
then go to the right.  
The hotel is on the left.
- It's directly opposite  
the Erawan Hotel, isn't  
it?
- It's catercornered to it.

### 17.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The verbs paj and maa occur as postpositions with other verbs to indicate direction of motion; paj 'motion away from the speaker' and maa 'motion toward the speaker'. Observe the following examples:

khâw maa <sup>1</sup>	'enter (towards the speaker)'
khâw paj	'enter (away from the speaker)'
òok maa	'exit (towards the speakers)'

---

<sup>1</sup>The meaning of khâw paj, khâw maa, òok maa, and òok paj is illustrated in the chart on the preceding page.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>òk paj</u>	'exit (away from the speaker)'
<u>thoo(rasàp) paj</u>	'telephone (away)from the speaker)'
<u>thoo(rasàp) maa</u>	'telephone (towards the speaker)'
<u>dəen maa</u>	'walk (towards the speaker)'
<u>dəen paj</u>	'walk (away from the speaker)'
<u>klàp paj</u>	'turn back (away from the speaker)'
<u>klàp maa</u>	'turn back (towards the speaker)'

- b) Prepositions such as naj 'in', nòk 'outside of', etc. may occur with nouns like khâan (or khân) 'side' and thaañ 'way, path' to form derivatives with the meaning 'space relationship'<sup>1</sup>. The following are examples:

khâannaj 'inside', khâannòk 'outside', khâannâa 'in front of', khâanbon 'up above', khâanlăn 'behind', khâanlâan 'down below', thaañsâaj 'to the left', thaañkhwâa 'to the right', thaañña 'North', thaañtâj 'South'.

### 17.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

- a) Transformation Drill<sup>2</sup> (Change from pattern 1 to 2.)

#### Pattern 1

1. roonrəem présidên jùu tronkan  
khâam kàp roonrəem ammarin

The President Hotel is  
opposite the Amarin.

#### Pattern 2

- roonrəem présidên kàp roonrəem  
ammarin jùu tron khâam kan

The President Hotel and  
the Amarin are across  
from each other.

---

<sup>1</sup>For a fuller description see Noss, 147 ff.

<sup>2</sup>The instructor can extend this drill and the three that follow by using other place names from the map on page 289.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu tronkan khâam kàp krom tamruət  
The Erawan Hotel is opposite the Police Department.
- roonrɛɛm eerawan kakrom tamruət jùu tron khâam kan  
The Erawan Hotel and the Police Department are opposite each other.
3. roonrɛɛm sajàam intəə jùu tronkan khâam kàp roonăn sajàam  
The Siam International is opposite the Siam Cinema.
- roonrɛɛm sajàam intəə ka roonăn sajàam jùu tron khâam kan  
The Siam International Hotel and the Siam Cinema are opposite each other.
4. sapòot khláp jùu tron kan khâam kàp culaa  
The Sports Club is opposite Chula(longkorn).
- sapòot khláp kàp culaa jùu tron khâam kan  
The Sports Club and Chulalongkorn are across from each other.

### b) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. diisaa j thaj jùu jyan kàp roonrɛɛm présidên  
Design Thai is diagonally across from the President.
2. roonphajaabaan culaa jùu jyan kàp (mahăawítthajaalaj) culaa  
Chula Hospital is diagonally across from Chula (University).

#### Pattern 2

- diisaa j thaj ka roonrɛɛm présidên jùu jyan kan  
Design Thai and the President are diagonally across from each other.
- roonphajaabaan culaa kàp culaa (lonkoon mahăawítthajaalaj) jùu jyan kan  
Chula Hospital and Chulalongkorn University are diagonally across from each other.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. ráan ee jùu jýan kàp ráan bii      ráan ee karáan bii jùu jyan kan  
Shop A is diagonally across      Shop A and Shop B are  
from Shop B.      diagonally across from  
each other.
4. roonăn lidôo jùu jýan kàp      roonăn lidôo kàp roonreem  
roonreem sajăam intəe      sajăam intəe jùu jýan kan  
The Lido Cinema is      The Lido Cinema and the  
diagonally across from      Siam International Hotel  
the Siam International      are diagonally across  
Hotel.      from each other.

### c) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. dəen paj thaən sáaj      khâam thanǎn paj, léew dəen paj  
thaən sáaj  
Cross the street, then go to  
the left.
2. dəen paj thaən níi      khâam thanǎn paj, léew dəen paj  
thaən níi  
Cross the street, then go this way.
3. dəen tron paj khâaṅnâa      khâam thanǎn paj, léew dəen tron paj  
khâaṅnâa  
Cross the street, then do  
straight ahead.
4. dəen paj thaənkhwăa      khâam thanǎn paj, léew dəen paj  
thaən khwăa  
Cross the street, then go to  
the right.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |      |  |   |
|----|------|--|---|
| 5. | sáaj | khâam thanǎn, léew dæen<br>paj thaanǎj | khâam thanǎn, léew dæen<br>paj thaanǎj sáaj |
|    |      | Cross the street<br>and go which way?  | Cross the street, and<br>go to the left.    |

### e) Response Drill

#### Cue

- |    |           |  |                                |
|----|-----------|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. | bàaj moon | weelaa thǎan khun ca<br>paj kin khâaw, ca klàp<br>maa kǐi moon khráp                         | ca klàp maa bàaj moon<br>khráp |
|    |           | You're going to eat<br>at noon. When will<br>you return?                                     | ,<br>I'll be back at 1 p.m.    |
| 2. | sǎon thǎm | khun ca paj ráp phǎan<br>weelaa jen, ca klàp<br>maa kǐi moon                                 | ca klàp maa sǎon thǎm          |
|    |           | You're going to pick<br>up a friend in the<br>late afternoon. When<br>will you return?       | At 8 p.m.                      |
| 3. | hâa moon  | khun paj fan théep thǎi<br>hǎn léep toon cháaw, ca<br>klàp maa kǐi moon                      | ca klàp maa hâa moon<br>cháaw  |
|    |           | You're going to listen<br>to tapes in the lab in<br>the morning. When will<br>you come back? | At 11 p.m.                     |

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

4. khâm khâm      khun paj sýy khõn thfi      ca klàp maa khâm khâm  
 talàat weelaa jen, ca  
 klàp maa kii moon  
 You're going shopping  
 at the market in the  
 late afternoon. When  
 will you be back?      Sometime in the evening.
5. hòk moon      mýawaanníi kháw paj      kháw ca klàp maa hòk  
 jen      bóosatân.wanníi kháw      moon jen  
 ca klàp maa kii moon  
 Yesterday he went to  
 Boston. What time  
 today will he get  
 back?      At 6 p.m.
6. sǎam moon      khun ca paj prachum      ca klàp maa sǎam moon  
 weelaa bàaj sõn  
 moon      khun ca klàp  
 kii moon  
 You are going to the  
 meeting at 2 p.m.  
 What time will you  
 get back?      At 3 p.m.

f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sǐi moon jen	khun maa roonrian sǎam moon cháaw, ca klàp (paj) bǎan kii moon You came to school at 9. What time are you going home?	ca klàp (paj) bǎan sǐi moon jen khráp  At 4 p.m.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |                   |  |   |
|----|-------------------|--|---|
| 2. | hâa moon<br>khrÿn | khun maa thîi thamnaan moon<br>cháaw, ca klàp (paj) bâan<br>kii moon<br>You came to the office<br>at 7. When will you go<br>home?  | ca klàp (paj) bâan<br>hâa moon khrÿn<br><br>At 5.30 p.m.                  |
| 3. | jen jen           | bàajníi khun ca paj hãa mǎo,<br>khun ca klàp (paj) bâan kii<br>moon<br>You're going to the<br>doctor's this afternoon.<br>What time will you go home?  | ca klàp (paj) bâan<br>jen jen<br><br>Sometime<br>the late after-<br>noon. |
| 4. | thîan<br>thîan    | phrûnńi cháaw khun ca paj<br>ráp phÿan thîi doon myan,<br>khun ca klàp paj thamnaan<br>kii moon<br>Tomorrow morning you are<br>going to pick up a friend<br>at Don Muang. What time<br>will you get back to the<br>office? | ca klàp paj thîan<br>thîan<br><br>Around noon.                            |
| 5. | bàaj sǎam<br>moon | mÿawaanníi khun paj<br>sathǎanthûut khun klàp<br>paj roonrian kii moon<br>Yesterday you went to the<br>Embassy. What time did<br>you get back to school?   | klàp paj bàaj<br>sǎam moon<br><br>At 3 p.m.                               |

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 6. | sìi thûm      kháw maa ñaanlían thîi bâan<br>phôm weelaa ñỳn thûm. kháw<br>klàp (paj) bâan kîi thûm<br>He came to a party at my<br>house at 7 p.m. What time<br>did he get home? | kháw klàp (paj)<br>bâan sìi thûm<br>.<br>At 10 p.m. |
|----|--|---|

g) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. no	mýacháawníi khun dæen maa roonriian rýplàaw khráp Did you walk to school this morning?	plàaw khráp (mâj dâj dæen) No, I didn't.
2. yes	bàajníi khun ca dæen paj bâan rýplàaw khráp Are you going to walk home this afternoon?	dæen khráp Yes, I am.
3. no	phrûñníi khun ca dæen maa roonriian rýplàaw khráp Are you going to walk to school tomorrow?	plàaw khráp (mâj dæen) No, I'm not.
4. no	mýakíiníi khun dæen paj prajsani rýplàaw khráp Did you walk to the Post Office a short time ago?	plàaw khráp (mâj dâj dæen) No, I didn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Substitution Dialog: thoo maa : thoo paj

MODEL: A: phanrajaa thoo maa hǎa khun 'Your wife called.'  
B: bòok wâa araj khráp 'What did she say?'  
A: khǒo hâj thoo paj hǎa kháw 'Please call her.'

Repeat the dialog substituting the following words for phanrajaa:

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. phŷan khun      | 4. phŷisǎaw khun    |
| 2. lûukchaa j kháw | 5. khruu khǒon khun |
| 3. khon thaj       | 6. khèsk malajuu    |

### 1) Substitution Dialog

MODEL: A: khun thoo paj hǎa 'Have you called your  
phanrajaa lésw rýjan wife yet?'  
B: thoo lésw khráp 'I did.'  
A: kháw bòok wâa araj 'What did she say?'  
B: (bòok wâa) bàaj moon (She said) she would come  
ca maa hǎa phǒm to see me at 1 p.m.

Repeat the dialog substituting the following words for phanrajaa.

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. lûuksǎaw khun   | 4. khun phôo  |
| 2. phŷan khun      | 5. khruu khun |
| 3. nóonchaa j khun | 6. khun mēe   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 17.3 EXERCISES (Use the maps on pages 288 and 289 with exercise a.)

- a) One student asks another if he knows where various buildings are. A second student gives the location either in terms of another building (directly opposite the Erawan Hotel, etc.) or gives directions as to how to get there (cross the street, go to the corner, etc.) Use the points marked A, B, C, D, and E as starting points for directions.
- b) One student reports to another that someone has telephoned him. There follows an exchange concerning (1) the person that called, (2) time of the call, and (3) the contents of the message.
- c) One student tells another one that he called him up last night (or yesterday, etc.). They discuss the time of the call and the message.
- d) Each student describes a 'trip' he has made recently in terms of places visited and times of visits. Another student asks questions about the trip (the location of places visited, the time he left home, the time he returned home, etc.).

### 17.4 VOCABULARY

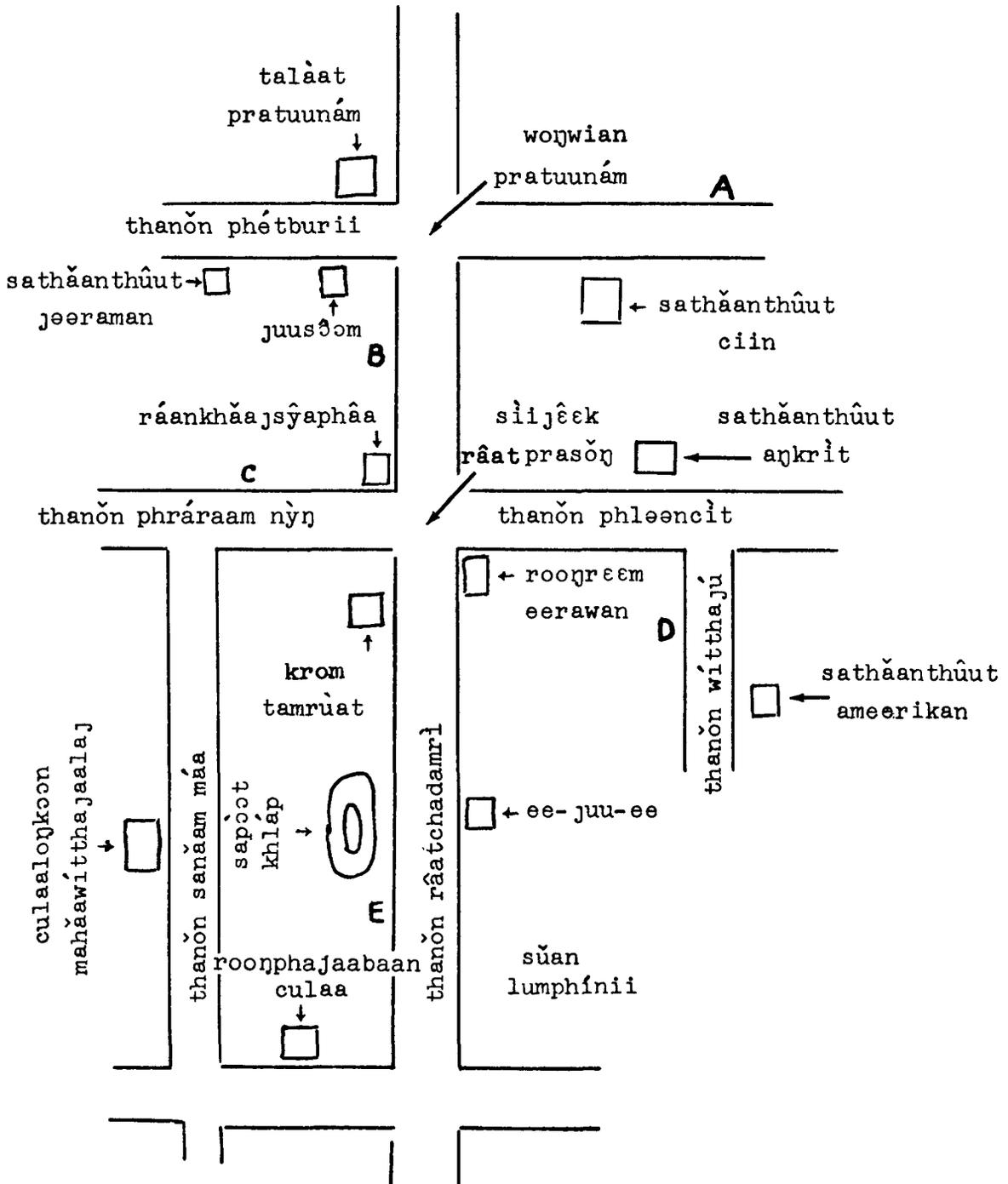
anrii duray	Henri Durant (name of a street)
amarin	Amarin (name of a hotel)
bon	above, on top of
diisaaj thaj	Design Thai (name of a dress shop)
jýaŋ kàp /ka kan	diagonally across
khâam	to cross, across
khâaŋbon	up above
khâaŋlâaŋ	down below
lidôo	Lido (name)
mum	corner
naanlíaŋ	party (entertainment)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

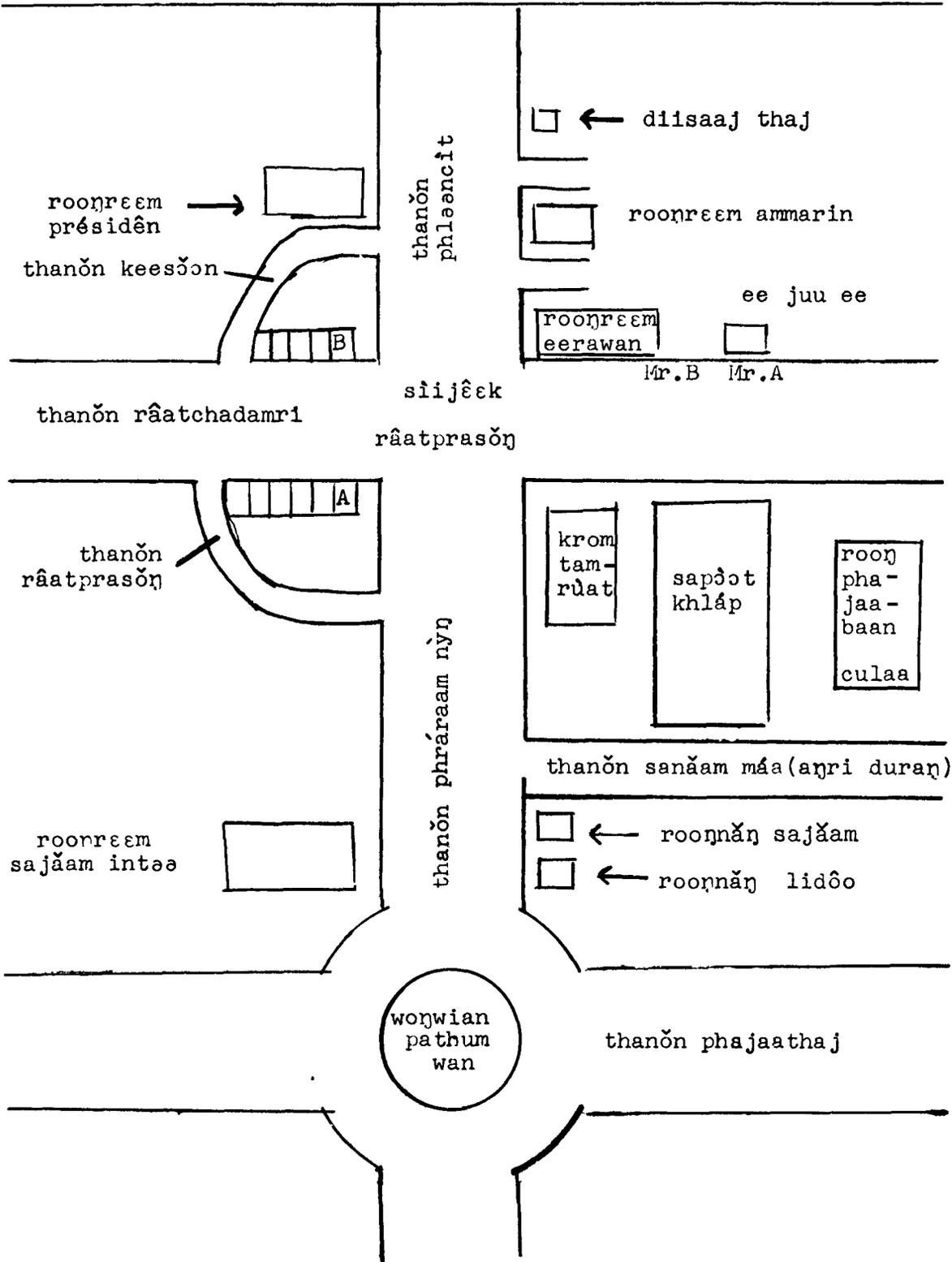
---

présidên	President (English name)
roonăn	movie house, cinema
sajăam	Siam (former name for Thailand)
sajăam intəə	Siam International Hotel
sanăam máa (hèn)	race track
sâap	to know
sýaphâa (tua, chút)	cloth
thaaṅṅyá	North
thaaṅṅtâj	South
thýṅ	to reach, get to
tronṅkhâam kan kàp/ka	opposite

THAI BASIC COURSE



THAI BASIC COURSE





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 18.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG:

- a) maa hǎa means to come to see someone.
- b) Both sâap and rúu mean to know a fact. sâap is more formal than rúu. In many constructions they are interchangeable, but not in all. In the following examples only rúu may be used.

kháw rúu nán̄sǎy

'He's literate'.

kháw rúu phaasǎa an̄krít

'He knows English'.

phaasǎa thaj khǒn̄ kháw jêe

'His Thai is very bad.

mâak. phǒm faṅ mâj rúu r̄yān̄

I don't understand what he's saying.'

- c) rúucàk means to be acquainted with a person or thing.

### 18.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Sentence embedding

One sentence (called a 'constituent sentence') may be embedded in another sentence (called a 'matrix sentence'). The embedded sentence stands in a particular relationship to the matrix sentence; for example, it may serve as object complement of the main verb, or in some other relationship. The examples below illustrate this.

- (i) jùu + Location with Motion Verbs

A: kháw	nân̄		He's sitting.
B: kháw		jùu khâan̄nâa	He's in front.
A/B: kháw	nân̄	jùu khâan̄nâa	He's sitting in front.

The sentence jùu + Location is embedded in the sentence kháw nân̄ and indicates the location of the action. It has the same function when it occurs with other verbs of motion like jyyn, paj, etc.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

(ii) Included sentence as Object Complement of Main verb.

A:	khun sâap	...		You know.
B:			kháw jùu thîinǎj	Where does he live?
A/B:	khun sâap	wâa	kháw jùu thîinǎj	You know where he lives.

Certain verbs like sâap 'to know a fact', phûut 'to speak', etc. normally have sentences as object complements. wâa serves as an obligatory connector when the verb precedes its object.

(iii) khǎo as Request Form

A:	phǎm	khǎo			I request....
B:			phǎm	cháj thoorasàp	I use the telephone.
A/B: 1)	phǎm	khǎo		cháj thoorasàp	{ I request (to be allowed) to use the telephone. 'May I use the telephone?'
A/B: 2)		khǎo	phǎm	cháj thoorasàp	
A/B: 3)		khǎo		cháj thoorasàp	

Either (1), (2), or (3) may be used. (3) is probably more common than (1) or (2). There is no difference in meaning in the three. The subject pronoun may be omitted only when it is phǎm or dichán.

This request form is often followed by dâj máj khráp as in khǎo cháj thoorasàp (nòoj), dâj máj khráp, to which the response is dâj khráp 'go ahead'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 18.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

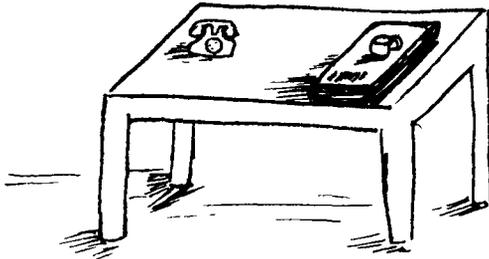
#### a) Response Drill (Use Chart I.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1. thoorasàp jùu thîinǎj Where's the telephone?	jùu bon tó On the table.
2. thuâj kaafɛɛ jùu thîinǎj Where's the coffee cup?	jùu bon nánsǎy (tó) On the book. (table)
3. krapǎw jùu thîinǎj Where's the suitcase?	jùu bon phýyn On the floor.
4. phěenthîi jùu thîinǎj Where's the map?	jùu bon fǎa On the wall.
5. kháw jùu thîinǎj Where is he?	jùu bon bâan In the house.
6. rôt jùu thîinǎj Where's the car?	jùu bon thanǎn On the street.

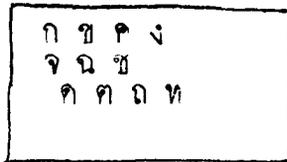
THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART I

nánsýy jùu bon tó. thûaj kaafse  
jùu bon nánsýy thoorasàp jùu  
bon tó.



krapǎw jùu bon phýyn



naalikaá jùu bon fǎa  
kradaandam jùu bon fǎa  
phěenthîi jùu bon fǎa  
rûup jùu bon fǎa  
tua nánsýy jùu bon kradaandam



kháw jùu bon bâan



rót jùu bon thǎnǒn

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

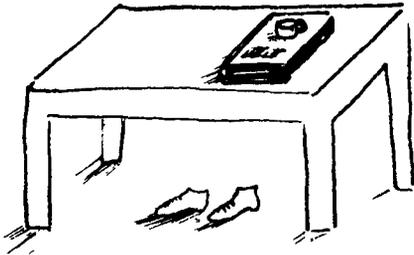
### b) Response Drill (Use Chart II.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1. rɔɔŋtháaw jùu thîinǎj Where are the shoes?	jùu tâj tó. Under the table.
2. náŋsǎy jùu thîinǎj Where's the book?	jùu bon tó On the table...  tâj thûaj kaafɛɛ under the coffee cup.
3. khon jùu thîinǎj Where is the person?	jùu bon bâan In the house.
4. mǎa jùu thîinǎj Where's the dog?	jùu tâjthǔn bâan In the space under the house.
5. caŋwàt udɔɔn jùu thîinǎj Where's Udon Province?	jùu nǎa khǒnkèn It's north of Konkaen.
6. caŋwàt khǒnkèn jùu thîinǎj Where's Konkaen Province?	jùu { nǎa khorâat tâj udɔɔn It's north of Korat/ south of Udon.
7. naalikaa jùu thîinǎj Where's the clock?	jùu nǎa kradaandam. It's above the blackboard.
8. kradaandam jùu thîinǎj Where's the blackboard?	jùu tâj naalikaa It's below the clock.

THAI BASIC COURSE

tâj - bon

CHART II



tâj

nánsýy jùu tâj thûaj kaafɛɛ  
rɔɔntháaw jùu tâj tó

bon

thûaj kaafɛɛ jùu bon nánsýy

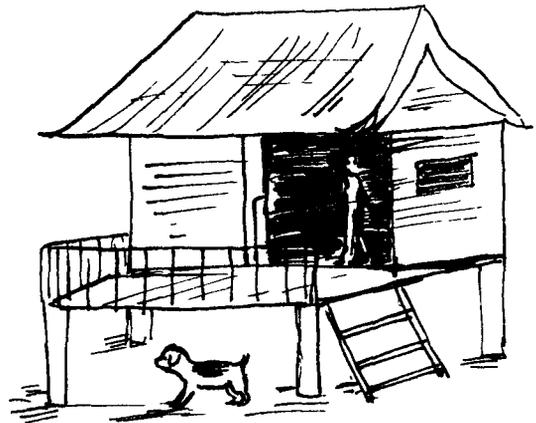
tâjthún bâan : bon bâan

tâj

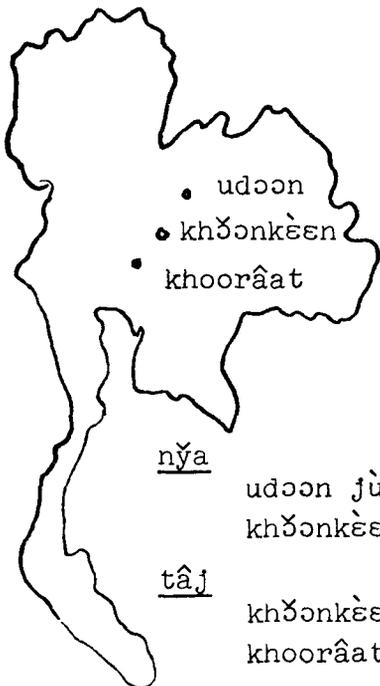
măa jùu tâjthún bâan

bon

khon jùu bon bâan



tâj - nýa



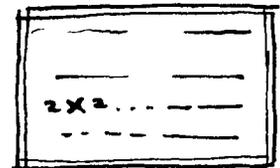
nýa

naalikaa jùu nýa  
kradaandam



tâj

kradandam jùu  
tâj naalikaa



nýa

udɔɔn jùu nýa khɔ̀ɔnkɛ̀ɛn  
khɔ̀ɔnkɛ̀ɛn jùu nýa khorâat

tâj

khɔ̀ɔnkɛ̀ɛn jùu tâj udɔɔn  
khorâat jùu tâj khɔ̀ɔnkɛ̀ɛn

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Sentence Combination Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. kháw nâŋ  
kháw jùu khâaŋnâa
2. kháw jyyn  
kháw jùu khâaŋkhâaŋ pratuu
3. kháw noon  
kháw jùu bon tian
4. kháw nâŋ  
kháw jùu naj rôt
5. kháw jyyn  
kháw jùu thîi sîjêsk
6. kháw nâŋ  
kháw jùu thîi kâwîi
7. kháw nâŋ  
kháw jùu thaaŋ khwăa
8. kháw jyyn  
kháw jùu thaaŋsáaj phôm
9. kháw nâŋ  
kháw jùu bon bâan

#### Pattern 3

- kháw nâŋ jùu khâaŋnâa  
He's sitting in front.
- kháw jyyn jùu khâaŋkhâaŋ pratuu.  
He's standing beside the door.
- kháw noon jùu bon tian  
He's sleeping on (in) the bed.
- kháw nâŋ jùu naj rôt  
He's sitting in the car.
- kháw jyyn jùu thîi sîjêsk  
He's standing on the corner.
- kháw nâŋ jùu thîi kâwîi  
He's sitting in the chair.
- kháw nâŋ jùu thaaŋ khwăa  
He's sitting on the right.
- kháw jyyn jùu thaaŋsáaj phôm  
He's standing to the left of me.
- kháw nâŋ jùu bon bâan  
He's sitting in the house.

d) Expansion Drill

1. nâŋ  
nâŋ sikhráp  
nâŋ kòon sikhráp  
chæen nâŋ kòon sikhráp  
chæen nâŋ thîinŋi kòon sikhráp  
chæen nâŋ khooj thîinŋi kòon sikhráp
  
2. khâw maa  
khâw maa sikhráp  
khâw maa kòon sikhráp  
chæen khâw maa kòon sikhráp  
chæen khâw maa khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp  
chæen khâw maa nâŋ khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp  
chæen khâw maa nâŋ khooj khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp

e) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (kháw) ca klàp mŷaràj,<br/>(khun) sâap máj khráp</li> </ol>  | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa<br/> kháw ca klàp mŷaràj<br/> Do you know when he will return?</p> |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. (kháw) paj mŷaràj<br/>(khun) sâap máj khráp</li> </ol>       | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa<br/> kháw paj mŷaràj<br/> Do you know when he went?</p>            |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. (kháw) thamŋaan thîinăj<br/>(khun) sâap máj khráp</li> </ol> | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa<br/> kháw thamŋaan thîinăj<br/> Do you know where he works?</p>    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. (kháw) chÿy araj                      khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
(khun) sâap máj khráp                      kháw chÿy araj  
Do you know what his name is?
5. sathǎanthûut aṅkrít jùu                      khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
thîinǎj                      kháw chÿy araj  
(khun) sâap máj khráp                      sathǎanthûut aṅkrít jùu thîinǎj  
Do you know where the British  
Embassy is?
6. kháw pen khraj                      khun sâap máj khráp  
khun sâap máj khráp                      wâa kháw pen khraj  
Do you know who (what) he is?
7. kháw ca paj kîi wan                      khun sâap máj khráp  
khun sâap máj khráp                      wâa kháw ca paj kîi wan.  
Do you know how many days  
he'll be gone?
8. thîi sathǎanthûut mi khon                      khun sâap máj khráp wâa thîi  
thâwràj                      sathǎanthûut mi khon thâwràj  
khun sâap máj khráp                      Do you know how many people  
are at the embassy?

### f) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. ryân

kháw rúu ryân

He understands.

2. ryân níi

kháw rúu ryân níi

He understands this matter.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. ryâŋ khon ameerikan      kháw rúu ryâŋ khon ameerikan  
He understands Americans.
4. bæe thoorasàp phǒm      kháw rúu bæe thoorasàp phǒm  
He knows my telephone number.
5. wâa khun pen khraj      kháw rúu wâa khun pen khraj  
He knows who you are.
6. wâa phǒm mâj chǒp kháw      kháw rúu wâa phǒm mâj chǒp kháw  
He knows I don't like him.

### g) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. khun      kháw rúucàk khun  
He knows you.
2. phǒm      kháw rúucàk phǒm  
He knows me.
3. chýy khun      kháw rúucàk chýy khun  
He knows your name.
4. sanǎamluǎŋ      kháw rúucàk sanǎamluǎŋ  
He's acquainted with (knows where it is) the Pramane Grounds.
5. kham níi      kháw rúucàk kham níi  
He's familiar with this word.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. khonthaj lăaj khon                      kháw rúucàk khonthaj lăaj khon  
He knows many Thais.
7. thaaj paj bân khun                      kháw rúucàk thaaj paj bân khun  
He knows the way to your house.

### h) Combination Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. talàat jùu thĭnăj  
phǒm sâap
2. kháw thamnaan araj  
phǒm sâap
3. kháw pen khon dii  
phǒm sâap
4. thĕsw năj mi ránaahăan  
diidii  
kháw sâap
5. khun kèn  
kháw sâap

#### Pattern 3

- phǒm sâap wâa talàat jùu thĭnăj  
I know where the market is.
- phǒm sâap wâa kháw thamnaan araj.  
I know where he works.
- phǒm sâap wâa kháw pen khondii  
I know he's a good person.
- kháw sâap wâa thĕsw năj  
mi ránaahăan diidii  
He knows in which section there  
are good restaurants.
- kháw sâap wâa khun kèn  
He knows you are skillful.

1) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. nân, khraj  
khun sâap máj
2. kháw chôp araj  
khun sâap máj
3. hõnsamùt jùu thfinǎj  
khun sâap máj khráp
4. kháw maa mýaràj  
khun sâap máj
5. phrûnñíi kháw ca maa máj  
khun sâap máj
6. myâwaanníi kháw paj  
thamnaan rýplàaw  
khun sâap máj
7. kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj  
dâj rýplàaw  
khun sâap máj

Pattern 3

- khun sâap máj wâa nân khraj  
Do you know who that over  
there is?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
kháw chôp araj  
Do you know what he likes?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
hõnsamùt jùu thfinǎj  
Do you know where the  
library is?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
kháw maa mýaràj  
Do you know when he came?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa phrûnñíi  
kháw ca maa máj  
Do you know if he's coming  
tomorrow?
- khun sâap máj wâa myâwaanníi kháw  
paj thamnaan rýplàaw  
Do you know whether he went  
to work yesterday or not?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
kháw phûut phaasǎathaj dâj rýplàaw  
Do you know if he speaks  
Thai or not?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. kháw phimdiit dâj dii rý plàaw  
khun sâap máj  
khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
kháw phimdiit dâj dii rý plàaw  
Do you know whether he can type well?
9. kháw chôop thaan aahăan faràŋ rý plàaw  
khun sâap máj  
khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
kháw chôop thaan aahăan faràŋ rý plàaw  
Do you know if he likes foreign food?

### j) Combination Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. kháw nâŋ jùu thîinăj  
phôm mâj sâap
2. khun mâj chôop kháw  
phôm mâj sâap
3. kháw jaŋ pen sòot  
phôm mâj sâap
- 4.. kháw tènŋaan léew rý jaŋ  
phôm mâj sâap

#### Pattern 3

- phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw  
nâŋ jùu thîinăj  
I don't know where she's sitting.
- phôm mâj sâap wâa khun  
mâj chôop kháw  
I didn't know that you didn't like her.
- phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw  
jaŋ pen sòot  
I didn't know that he was still single.
- phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw  
tènŋaan léew rý jaŋ  
I didn't know whether he was married or not.

5. kháw ca maa máj  
phǒm mâj sâap

phǒm mâj sâap wâa kháw ca  
maa máj

I don't know if she will  
come or not.

k) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. kháw tham dâj rý plàaw  
phǒm mâj dâj thǎam (kháw)

phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa  
kháw tham dâj rý plàaw

I didn't ask if he could do it.

2. kháw ca klàp maa máj  
phǒm mâj dâj thǎam

phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa  
kháw ca klàp maa máj

I didn't ask if he would  
return.

3. kháw khœj thamnaan araj  
phǒm mâj dâj thǎam (kháw)

phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa  
kháw khœj thamnaan araj

I didn't ask what he used  
to do.

4. kháw pen khondií máj  
khun thǎam phýan khun  
rýplàaw

khun thǎam phýan khun  
rýplàaw wâa kháw pen khondií máj

Did you ask your friend  
if he is a good person?

5. kháw jùu thǐnǎj  
khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw

khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw  
wâa kháw jùu thǐnǎj

Did you ask him where he  
lived?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. kháw kháwcaj máj                      khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw  
khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw              wâa khâw khâwcaj máj  
Did you ask him if he  
understood?
7. khun sǒmsàk jùu rý mâj jùu              khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw wâa  
khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw              khun sǒmsàk jùu rý mâj jùu  
Did you ask him if Somsak  
was in or not?
8. kháw ca maa dâj máj                      khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw wâa  
khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw              kháw ca maa dâj máj  
Did you ask him if he  
would be able to come?

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khǎo cháj thoorasàp nòoj, dâj máj khráp  
May I use the telephone?
2. khǎo thǎam araj nòoj, dâj máj khráp  
May I ask something?
3. khǎo duu nòoj, dâj máj khráp  
May I look?
4. khǎo òok kòon weelaa, dâj máj khráp  
May I leave ahead of time?
5. khǎo òok kòon weelaa sák siphâa naathii, dâj máj khráp  
May I leave 15 minutes ahead of time?

Repeat the drill above two times. Use phǒm khǎo... one time and khǎo phǒm... one time.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. bòok	kháw <u>bòok</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thĭan He said he would return before noon.
2. khít	kháw <u>khít</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thĭan He thought he would return before noon.
3. phŭut	kháw <u>phŭut</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thĭan He said he would return before noon.
4. sàŋ	kháw <u>sàŋ</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thĭan He left a message that he would return before noon.
5. thoo maa bòok	kháw <u>thoo maa bòok</u> wâa kháw ca klàp kòon thĭan He called and said he would return before noon.

### 18.4 EXERCISES

- a) One student asks another where various classroom objects are; another responds that they are on, above, under, etc. other objects.
- b) Using the map following page 74 (or a classroom map) discuss the relative positions ('north of', 'south of') of various Thai cities and provinces.
- c) Different students assume different positions in the classroom (standing by the door, sitting on the table, etc.). Other students describe the positions they are in.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Have the students find out information about each other (where they live, whether they play tennis, if they are cold, etc.). Use conversational exchanges like the one below:

Student A: Do you know where Mr. C lives?

Student B: No, I don't.

- (to Student D): Where does Mr. C live?

Student D: I think he lives on Birch Street.

Student C: No, I don't. I live on Elm Street.

- (Student A to Student B): Did you ask Mr. C where he lives?

Student B: No, I didn't. I asked Mr. D.

Student A: What did Mr. D say?

Student B: He said he didn't know.

Student A: Then you didn't ask Mr. C?

Student B: No, I didn't.

Student A: Ask him now.

- (Student B to Student C): Where do you live?

Student C: On Elm Street.

Student B: He said he lived on Elm Street.

Student A: Thanks very much.

- e) Student A asks Student B if he is familiar with a certain person or place. Student B responds that he is not familiar with the person or place and asks for further information (where a thing is or who a person is). Student A provides the information.
- f) Student A asks the instructor for permission to perform some act (close the window, open his book, etc.) The instructor responds to the request either negatively or affirmatively.
- g) One student asks another his opinion about something. The second student gives an opinion.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 18.5 VOCABULARY

๓๐	oh
bəə (bəə)	number (for rooms, telephone, clothing size, etc.)
chəən	please
chôp	to like
fǎa (fǎa)	wall
hěn	to see
hônrap khèek (hôn)	reception room, living room
jjyn	to stand
kham	word
khít	to think
khon	person (classifier for person)
kh๓๐	to request, ask
kh๐๑	to wait
krápǎw (baj)	suitcase, bag, purse
mǎa	dog
nân	to sit
noən	to sleep
phimdít	to type, print
phýyn	floor
roəntháaw (khûu)	shoes (pair)
rúu ryan	to understand
ryan	story (about), about (classifier for story)
sák	a little, bit
sanǎam lúan	the Pramane Grounds
sàn	to order, to leave instructions or a message

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sawàt	Sawat (name)
sii, sí	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
tâj	under
tâjthŭn	the space under the house
thăam	to ask, (a question)
thuâj (baj)	cup (classifier for a cup of something)
tiaŋ (tiaŋ)	bed (to sleep on)
tua náŋsŷy (tua)	letter (of the alphabet)
wan (wan)	day (classifier for day)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON NINETEEN

#### 19.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions to the Bathroom

- A: khǒwthōot, hōnám sámràp  
phûuchaaj jùu thīnǎj khráp      Excuse me, where's the  
men's bathroom?
- B: hōnám phûuchaaj lǎ  
jùu khâanlâan      The men's bathroom?  
It's downstairs.
- A: paj thaanǎj khráp      Which way?
- B: paj thaanǎi  
loŋ kradaaj paj, lésw líaw khwǎa      Go this way.  
hōnám ca jùu thaaj khwǎa myy      Go down the stairs, then  
turn right. The bathroom  
will be on your right.
- A: khòopkhun khráp      Thank you.
- B: mǎj pen raj khráp      You're welcome.

#### 19.1 GRAMMAR DRILLS

##### a) Expansion Drill

1. loŋ      down  
loŋ paj      Go down.  
loŋ kradaaj paj      Go down the stairs.  
dœen loŋ kradaaj paj      Walk down the stairs.
2. loŋ      down  
loŋ paj      Go down.  
loŋ líf paj      Go down on the elevator.  
loŋ líf paj chán sǒŋ      Go down to the second  
floor on the elevator.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. khỳn up  
khỳn paj Go up.  
khỳn kradaaj paj Go up the stairs.  
dæen khỳn kradaaj paj Walk up the stairs.  
dæen khỳn kradaaj paj chán pèet Walk up the stairs to  
the eighth floor.
4. khỳn up  
khỳn paj Go up.  
khỳn líf paj Go up on the elevator.  
khỳn líf paj khâanbon Go upstairs on the  
elevator.
5. loŋ down  
loŋ maa Come down.  
loŋ kradaaj maa Come down the stairs.  
dæen loŋ kradaaj maa Walk down the stairs.
6. loŋ down  
loŋ maa Come down.  
loŋ líf maa Come down on the  
elevator.
7. khỳn up  
khỳn maa Come up.  
khỳn kradaaj maa Come up the stairs.  
dæen khỳn kradaaj maa Walk up the stairs.  
(towards the speaker)
8. khỳn up  
khỳn maa Come up.  
khỳn líf maa Come up on the elevator.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. khỳn up  
khỳn maa Come up.  
chæen khỳn maa kòon sikhráp Please come up first.  
chæen khỳn maa bon bâan kòon Please come in the house  
sikhráp first.

b) Response Drill (See Chart I)

1. Teacher: kháw kamlan dæen paj hõnsamùt  
She's walking to the library.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What is she doing?	kháw kamlan dæen She's walking.
kháw kamlan ca paj nǎj Where is she going?	paj hõnsamùt To the library.
kháw paj janņaj How is she going?	kháw kamlan dæen She's walking.

2. Teacher: kháw kamlan dæen maa hõnrían  
She's coming to the classroom.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What's she doing?	dæen Walking.
kháw kamlan ca paj nǎj Where is she going?	maa hõnrían To school.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kháw maa jaŋŋaj                      dæen maa.  
How is she coming?                      Walking.

3. Teacher: kháw kamlan nân loŋ bon kâwfi  
She's sitting down on the chair.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What is she doing?	nân (She's) sitting.
kháw nân loŋ bon <sup>1</sup> araj What is she sitting on?	bon kâwfi On a chair.

4. Teacher: kháw kamlan noon loŋ bon tian  
He's lying down on the bed.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What's he doing?	noon Lying.
noon loŋ bon araj What's he lying on?	bon tian On the bed.

5. Teacher: kháw kamlan jyyn khÿn  
She's standing.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What's she doing?	jyyn khÿn Standing (up).

---

1. This type of question is not common. It is used here in order to elicit a certain kind of response.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. Teacher: kháw kamləŋ lúk khÿn càak tian  
He's getting up out of bed.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamləŋ tham arəj What's he doing?	lúk khÿn Getting up.
lúk khÿn càak arəj <sup>1</sup> What is he getting up from?	càak tian From bed.

c) Contraction Drill

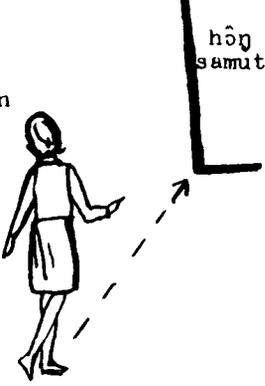
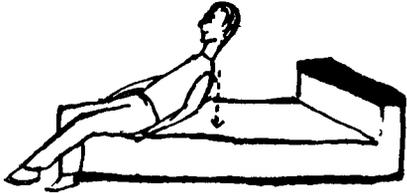
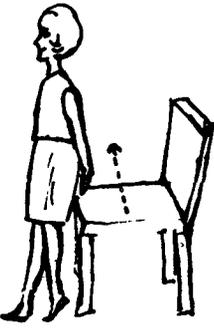
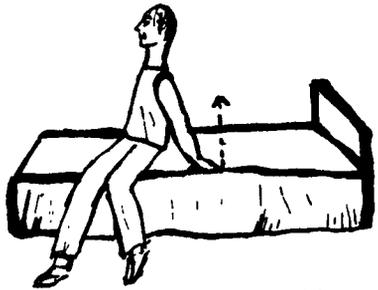
<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. hōŋnám sámrap phūuchaaj Men's toilet	hōŋnám phūuchaaj Men's toilet
2. hōŋnám sámrap phūujǐŋ Women's toilet	hōŋnám phūujǐŋ Women's toilet
3. nāŋsǎy sāmrap dək A book for children	nāŋsǎy dək A book for children
4. rót sámrap thūut The ambassador's car	rót thūut The ambassador's car.
5. thī còt rót sámrap cāwnāathī The parking place for officials	thī còt rót cāwnāathī The parking place for officials

---

<sup>1</sup>This type of question is not common. It is used in this exercise only in order to get a certain kind of response.

THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART I

<p>1.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ dæən pəj (thǐi) hōŋsamùt</p> 	<p>2.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ dæən maa (thǐi) hōŋrian</p> 
<p>3.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ nāŋ loŋ bon kâwǐi</p> 	<p>4.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ noon loŋ bon tiaŋ</p> 
<p>5.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ jyyn khǐn</p> 	<p>6.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ lúk khǐn càak tiaŋ</p> 

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 6. tó sámràp khruu<br>The teacher's desk. | tó khruu<br>The teacher's desk. |
|---|---------------------------------|

### d) Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. phûujǎn	nǐi hōnám sámràp phûuchaaj This is a men's toilet.	mâj cháj sámràp phûujǎn It's not for women.
2. phûujàj	nǐi nán̄sǎy sámràp dèk This is a book for children.	mâj châj sámràp phûujàj It's not for adults.
3. nákrian	nǐi tó sámràp khruu This is the teacher's desk.	mâj châj sámràp nákrian It's not for students.
4. dỳm	nǐi nám sámràp cháj This is water for use.	mâj châj sámràp dỳm It's not for drinking.
5. khon con	nǐi bân sámràp khon ruaj This is a house for rich people.	mâj châj sámràp khon con It is not for poor people.
6. rian	nǐi nán̄sǎy sámràp àn lên This is a book to read for pleasure.	mâj châj sámràp rian It is not a text to study.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                          |  |   |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| 7. thahǎan               | nǐi khrǎnbin sámràp<br>phonlaryan<br>This is a plane for<br>civilians. | mâj châj sámràp<br>thahǎan<br>It is not for<br>soldiers.                |
| 8. prathaan<br>aathípodi | nǐi rót sámràp thûut<br>This is the car for<br>the Ambassador.         | mâj châj sámràp<br>prathaanaathípodi<br>It is not for the<br>President. |
| 9. chaawnaa              | nǐi khrǎnmy sámràp<br>chaawsǎan<br>This is a tool for<br>gardeners.    | mâj châj sámràp<br>chaawnaa<br>It is not for rice<br>farmers.           |

### 19.2 EXERCISES

- a) The instructor will ask different students to do different things (stand up, sit down, sit down on the table, etc.). As the student performs the action, another student will ask a third student questions like these: (1) What's he doing? (2) What's he doing it on? (If appropriate)
- b) Ask directions to:
1. Registrar's room.
  2. The library.
  3. Language laboratory.
  4. The restaurant.
  5. Other places in the vicinity.

19.3 VOCABULARY

cháj	to use
chán	floor, story
con	to be poor (in wealth)
còot	to park
dỳym	to drink
hônnaám	bathroom
jyyn	to stand
khryañbin (khryañ)	airplane
khryañmyy (khryañ)	tool
khÿn	(to go) up
kradaj	stairs, steps
lon	to (go) down
líaw	to turn
líf	elevator
lúk	to get up
myy	hand
phûujàj (khon)	an adult
prathaanaathípbodii	The President
ruaj	to be rich, wealthy
sámrap	for
thfi còotrót	parking place

LESSON TWENTY

20.0 BASIC EPISODE: Tambon Bangchak

nîi khyy tambon baançàak. tambon níi jùu naj cañwàt hèn nỳn naj phâak klaan. tambonníi tân jùu rim khloon wát pen sũunklaan khõon tambon níi. wát jùu rim khloon. khâan khâan wát mii roonrian. roonrian níi pen roonrian léklék, mii khruu hâa khon. khonnyñ maa càak krunthêep, ìik sîi khon pen khon cañwàtníi. thîi roonrian mii nákrían raawraaw róoj khon.

fàn tronkan khâam kàp wát mii talàat, ráan lé sathãanii tamruat. talàat jùu jýan kàp wát. khâan khâan talàat mii ráan tàantàan chên ráankhãajkhõon, ráantàtphõm. thîi tambon níi mâj mii roonñăn, roonreem lé prajsanii. roonphajaabaan kô mâj mii tè mii sũksãalaa. thîi sũksãalaa mii naanphajaabaan sõon khon. sũksãalaa jùu klâj kàp talàat. thîiníi mii sathãanii tamruat. sathãanii tamruat jùu mâj klaj càak talàat.

tambonni mii rótfaj phaan. sathãanii rótfaj jùu klaj càak talàat.

hũanâa khõon tambon riak wâa kamnan. kháw chýy naaj prasít kènnaan. naaj prasít pen chaawnaa mýankan. chaaw baançàak kýap thúk khon pen chaawnaa. bân kamnan prasít jùu fàn diaw kàp wát tè jùu klaj càak wát lé talàat. nâabân kháw pen khloon. lãnbân pen naa.

20.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. tambonníi chýy araj
2. tambonníi jùu naj pháak nǎj
3. tambonníi tâṅ jùu bon khloṅ rýy mēsnám
4. araj pen sũunklaṅ khṣṅ tambon níi
5. roṅrian jùu thīi nǎj
6. thīi roṅrian mi khruu kīi khon. mi nákrīan thāwràj
7. khruu maa càak thīinǎj bâṅ
8. fàṅ tronkan khāam kàp wát mi araj bâṅ
9. thīi tambonníi mi roṅphajaabaan máj
10. thīi tambonníi mi sathǎanii tamrùat máj . jùu thīinǎj
11. tambonníi mi rótfaj phàn máj
12. hũanāa khṣṅ tambon rīak wāa araj
13. chaaw baṅcàak kyàp thúk khon thamṅaan araj
14. bâan kamnam prasít jùu thīinǎj
15. nāa bâan khṣṅ kháw pen araj . lǎṅ bâan pen araj

### Translation of the Basic Episode

This is Bangchak tambon.<sup>1</sup> This tambon is in a province in the central part. This tambon is located on a canal. The temple is the center of this tambon. The temple is on the bank of the canal. Beside the temple is the school. This school is a very small school. It has five teachers. One comes from Bangkok; the other four are natives of this province. At the school there are around one hundred and fifty pupils.

On the opposite bank from the temple are the market, shops, and the police station. The market is diagonally opposite the temple. Next to the market are various shops, such as a store, and a barber shop. There is no movie house, hotel, or post office in this tambon. There is no hospital either, but there is a public health center. At the center are two nurses. The center is near the market. There is a police station here. The police station is not far from the market.

The train passes through this tambon. The train station is far from the market.

---

<sup>1</sup>A tambon is a subdivision of an amphoe, which is a subdivision of a changwat. changwat, amphoe, and tambon may be translated roughly as province, district, and precinct.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

The head of the tambon is called the kamnan. He is Mr. Prasit Kengngan. Mr. Prasit is also a rice farmer. Almost all the residents of Bangchak are rice farmers. Kamnan Prasit's house is on the same side of the canal (lit. bank) as the temple, but is far from the temple and the market. In front of his house is the canal. Behind are rice fields.

### 20.2 EXERCISE

Student A takes the part of a resident of Bangchak (precinct). Student B takes the part of an American writer who has just come to Bangchak with the intention of writing a magazine article about it. He asks questions of one or more residents in order to get information of the following kind:

- a) People (how many there are, ages, how many children they have, etc.)
- b) Physical layout of the tambon (location of buildings, rice fields, the canal, etc.)
- c) Occupations of people.
- d) Daily habits (time of eating, going to bed, going to work, etc.)
- e) Weather
- f) Religion (if there is a wat, where it is, when people go to it).
- g) Market (where it is located, when it is open, who goes there, etc.)
- h) Language (which dialect of Thai is spoken in the tambon, in the school, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- i) Health Facilities (where does one go when he is sick, if there is a clinic, how many doctors and nurses does it have, etc.)
- j) Travel experience of people (have they been outside the tambon, to Bangkok, to some other place, etc.)
- k) Any other information that may be of interest

Students should take turns carrying out each of the roles in the interview. Students not participating should be taking notes on the conversation. After each interview students not taking part in it may question other students about information contained in it.

### 20.3 VOCABULARY

amphəə (amphəə)	district, a subdivision of a changwat
baanɕaak	Bangchak, name of tambon in Thailand
chên	such as
fàn	bank (of a river, street)
hèn	classifier for places
hŭanâa (khon)	the chief, head (of an organization)
kamnan (khon)	kamnan, the chief of the tambon
kènŋaan	Kengngan (last name)
kô	then, also, too, consequently
kyàp	almost
khyy	to be (in written language or formal speech)
khlooŋ (khlooŋ)	canal
mÊEnám (sǎaj)	river
naa (râj)	rice field
naaj (khon)	Mr. (title)
prasit	Prasit (male first name)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phàan	to pass
raaw/raawraaw	around, approximately
rim	bank, edge
sùksǎalaa (hèn)	public health center or clinic
sǔunklaan (hèn)	center
tambon (tambon)	precinct, subdivision of an amphoe
tâŋ	to be located
tronkan khâam	opposite

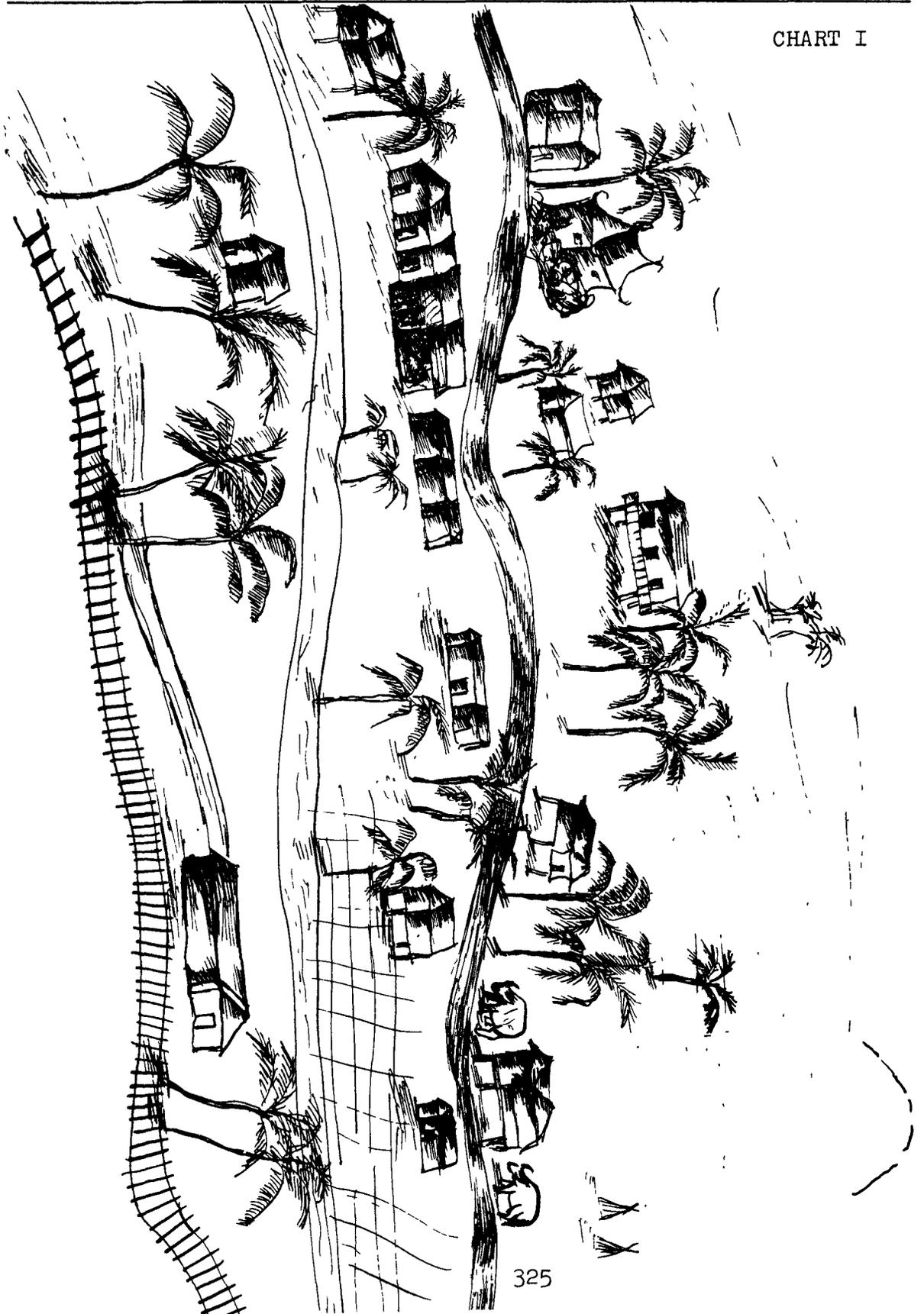
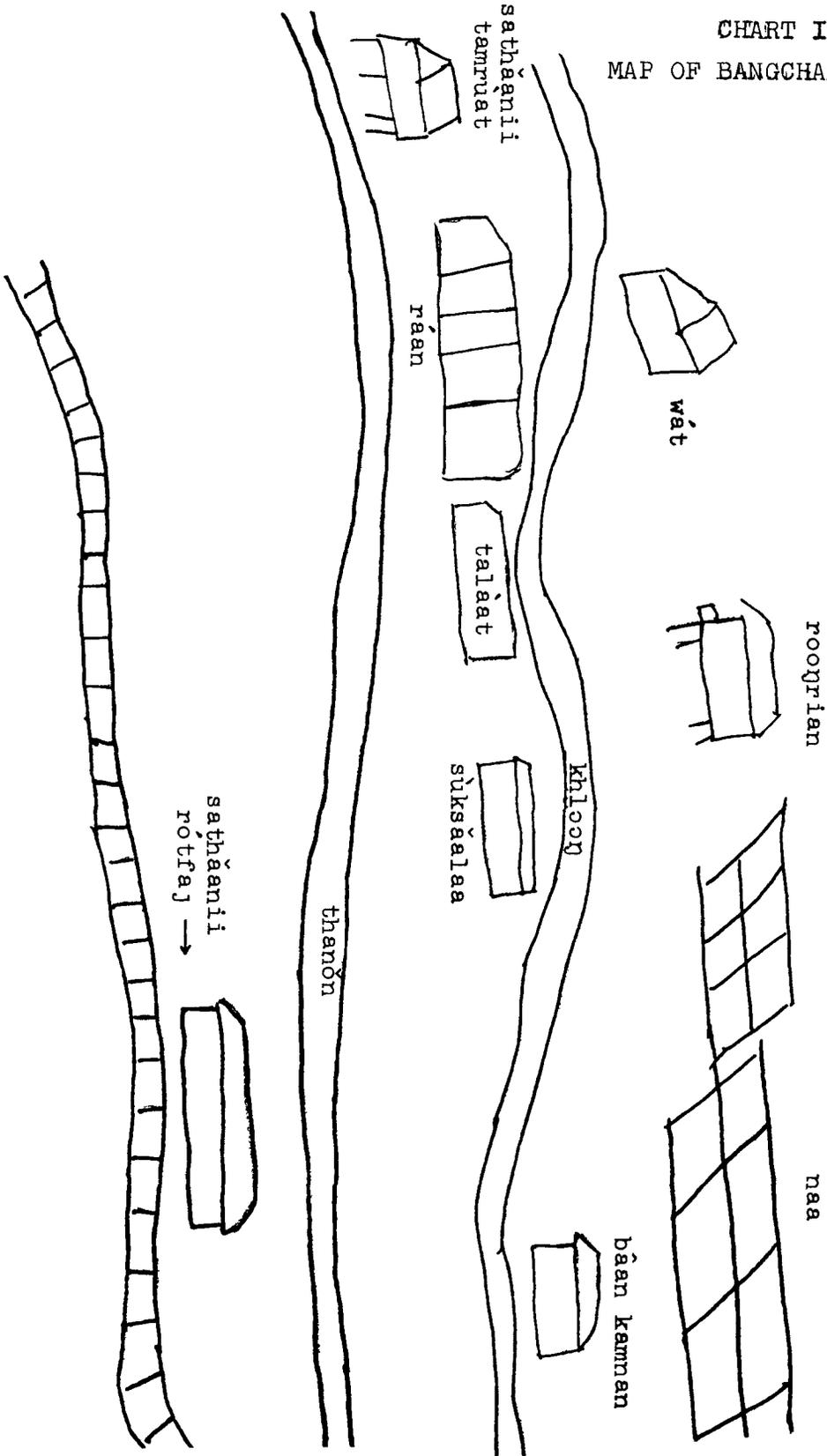


CHART II  
MAP OF BANGCHAK TAMBON



# THAI BASIC COURSE

## COMPREHENSIVE GLOSSARY

For Volumes I and II

This glossary contains all of the words that have been used in this volume, a total of approximately 1400 entries. It gives the following information about each entry:

(1) A phonemic transcription using Roman letters with some special symbols added, and (2) English definitions or equivalents.

The entries are arranged in the order of the English alphabet except that all words beginning with vowels are placed at the beginning of the glossary in the following order:

a, e, ε, ə, i, o, ɔ, u, and y.

Noun and Verb Compounds that occur in the text are listed after the head of the compound, thus

hǔa (hǔa) .... head

hǔakhâm .... early evening (6 to 9 p.m.)

### a

aacaan (khon)	college or university teacher
aachîp	profession
áafarikaa (thawîp)	Africa (continent)
aahǎan (jàaŋ, mýy)	food
aahǎan klaaŋwan	lunch, noontime meal
aajú	age (in years)
aakàat	weather, air
àan	to read
aarii	Aree (male or female first name)
aa sii ee	R.C.A.
aathít	week
âaw	oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)
aj bèk (bòrisàt)	I.B.E.C. (name of a company)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

ajpaanaa	Ipana
ajútthajaa	Ayuthaya (city in Central Thailand)
ameerikaa	America
ameerikan	American
ammarin	Amarin (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
amphəə (amphəə)	district, a subdivision of a changwat
amphoon	Amphorn (male or female first name)
an	classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use <u>an</u> as a substitute for other classifiers.
anujâat ... (hâj)	to permit
anúrôot	Anuroj (male first name)
anúsăawarii (hèn)	monument
ankrít	England, English
anrii duraŋ	Henri Durant. (name of a street in Bangkok)
apháatmên (lăŋ)	apartment
araj	what (question word)
àt	to tape, to copy
athíbaaj	to explain
aw	to get, to take; to want (to have) cf. <u>tônkaan</u>
aw máj	will you accept? (question word. It is similar in usage to <u>di máj</u> .)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e

ee-aj-dii	A.I.D. (Agency for International Development)
ee-juu-ee	A.U.A. (American University Association)
eeŋ	by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence
tua phǒm eeŋ	I (myself)
... kháw eeŋ	he (himself)
... raw eeŋ	we (ourselves), more emphatic than 'tua' alone
eeŋ	is used to emphasize the shortness shortness of the distance in <u>klâj khêenfi eeŋ</u> 'right near here'.
eerawan	Erawan (name of hotel)
eesia (thawîip)	Asia
eethén	Athens
éf-és-aj	F.S.I. (Foreign Service Institute)

### ɛ

ɛɛ fráans	Air France (name of an airline)
éepên (lûuk, phǒn, baj)	apple
éessphajrin (mét)	aspirin

### ə

əə	by the way
----	------------

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1

lik	in addition, more
lik thii	again, one more time
imphiirfan	Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
india (prathêet)	India, Indian
indianâa (rát)	Indiana
indoniisia (prathêet)	Indonesia, Indonesian
isăan (phâak)	northeast (in Thailand)
italfan	Italian ( <u>italfi</u> 'Italy')
itsalaam	Moslem

### ๐

ookàat (khrán)	chance, occasion
okinaawaa (kò)	Okinawa
๐๓	classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen

### ๑

๑๐	Oh, yes! (suddenly remembering something)
๑๑	Oh! (I see, I get it.)
๑๒k (nən)	to put up the money for, to pay for, to stand good for
๑๒k maa	to come out
... paj	to go out
๑๒k siăn	to pronounce, to voice
(khít) } ๑๒k	(to figure) out (a completive verb)
(nyk) }	

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

òon	light (color)
òorianten	Oriental, name of a hotel in Bangkok
óosatreelia (prathêet)	Australia, Australian

### u

ûan	(to be) fat, stout
ubon	Ubon (female first name)
ubon	Ubon (city in Northeast Thailand)
udoon	Udon (city in Northeast Thailand)
ùtnǔn	to support, assist (financially) to patronize
ùttaradìt	Uttaradit (city in North Thailand)

### y

ỳyn ỳyn	other, others, other ones
-----------	---------------------------

### b

bàaj	afternoon, o'clock (used for the time 1 p.m. - 4 p.m.)
baan	classifier for <u>door</u>
bâan (lǎn)	house, home
bâanchâw (lǎn)	a house to rent
bâanmáaj (lǎn)	a wooden house
bâantỳk (lǎn)	a stucco home, brick house (building)
baan	(to be) thin
bâan, mân	some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

baan̄caak	Bangchak, (name of tambon in Thailand)
baan̄kapì	Bangkapì (section of Bangkok)
baan̄puu	Bangpu (name of a tambon)
bàat	'baht' (Thai unit of currency)
baj	classifier for 'picture', etc.
baj la hâa	5 baht bank note
bajmáaj	leaf
baw	(to be) light (in weight)
bèεp	model, type, style
béŋjôj	small bill (change)
bəə (bəə)	number (for rooms, telephone, clothing size, etc.)
bèək	to withdraw (money), to requisition (as from a storeroom)
bèək nən	to get money (from the bank)
bin	to fly
bin	Bill (name)
bòk	land (as opposed to sea)
bon	above, on top of
boolîŋ	bowling
bóssatân	Boston
bòt (bòt)	lesson (in a textbook)
bòək	to tell
bóorisàt	company
bóorisàt námman	Oil company
bóoriween	compound, area, grounds (around a building), vicinity
braaw(n)	Brown (name)
burìi (muan)	cigarette
bùt (khon)	child (elegant usage) (one's direct descendant)
bÿa	(to be) bored

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## c

ca	will, shall (future particle)
càaj (nən)	to pay refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion)
càak	from
càkkrajaan (khan)	a bicycle
cam... dâj	to remember
camnuan	amount
caŋ	extremely, a great deal
caŋwàt	province
carəen kruŋ	Charoen Krung (name of a street in Bangkok)
cátsamèsk	JUSMAG (Joint Military Assistance Group)
câw (oŋ)	ruler (literally 'prince')
câwkhǎoŋ (khon)	owner
câwnâathîi (khon)	official, officer, staff member, the man in charge
câwbàaw (khon)	bridegroom
câwsǎaw (khon)	bride
cennîi	Jenny (name)
cèt	seven
cəə	to meet with unexpectedly
ciin (prathêet)	China, Chinese
cim	Jim (name)
ciŋ ná	That's true.
con	(to be) poor (in wealth)
coo	Joe

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

còp	to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study)
còtmǎaj (chabàp)	letter (to mail)
cóoc	George (name)
cɔɔn	John (name)
còot	to park
culaa	Chula (abbreviation for Chulalonghorn University)

### ch

cháa	(to be) late, slow
chaaJ (hèn)	edge, rim, border
chaaJthalee (hèn)	the beach
chaam salàt (baj, lûuk)	salad bowl
chaan (chaan)	patio, porch without a roof
châan-	a person who has skill in some craft or trade. (It is the head noun in many noun compounds.)
châat (châat)	nationality, nation, race
chaaw (khon)	resident, native
chaawnaa (khon)	rice farmer
chaawrâj (khon)	a crop farmer
chaawsǎan (khon)	gardener, orchardist
cháaw	morning, a.m.
cháawmÿyt	early morning
chabàp	classifier for letter or newspaper
cháJ	to be so, to be it, be the one (meant, intended)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

châj máj	Isn't it so? Isn't it the one?
cháj	to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money), to use up, require, take (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)
chalĭaŋ (chalĭaŋ)	terrace, balcony, porch
chán	I, me. (Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.)
chán	class, rank, grade, floor (in a building), story
chánbon	upstairs
chándiaw	one story
chánkhrÿŋ	one and a half story
chánlâaŋ	downstairs
chanít	kind, type (emphasis on type)
chát	plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)
châw	to rent
chên	such as
chæən	please, go ahead and...
chianmàj	Chiangmai (city in North Thailand)
chiaw	really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

chîawchaan	(to be) expert, experienced
chíkhaakôo	Chicago
chín	piece (of anything whole), hence classifier for piece of clothing, furniture, bread meat, bones, work (a specific task), etc.
chom	to look at, to admire, look at with pleasure, to praise
chomphûu	rose apple
chótchóoj	Chotchoi (Thai female first name)
chôo	bunch, classifier of fruit in a bunch
chôop	to like, be fond of
chûaj	please (do something); help
chûammon	hour (60 minutes)
chuan	to invite, urge, persuade someone to do something
chút	classifier for suit (e.g. of clothing), suite (of furniture), set (e.g. of ornaments, glass- ware, books), for a committee, cabinet (of ministers, for a team)
chútrápkhèek (chút)	living room furniture
chútthaankhâaw (chút)	a dining set
chýak	rope, cord, classifier for 'elephant'
chýy	name, to be named

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d

dâam	classifier for 'pen', etc.
dâj	can, could, be able
dâj	to get, obtain, procure
(hǎa) dâj	to get (it indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.)
dâjjin	to hear
(sǐi) dam	black (color)
dan	loud
deewít	David
dèk (khon)	child (immature person)
denwêe	Denver
(sǐi) dɛɛŋ	(to be) red (color)
dəən	to walk
dəənthaaŋ	to travel
dichǎn, dichán	I (female speaker)
dii	(to be) good
diicaj	(to be) glad
diaw	one only, only
dǐawníi	right now
dǐaw	soon
dǐaw	or else, otherwise
diin ras(k)	Dean Rusk
diisaj thaj	Design Thai (name of a dress shop)
dík	Dick (name)
dinsǎo (thêŋ)	pencil
dontrii	music
dooj	by (means of transportation)
doojtron	directly

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

dóktêe (khon)	doctor (Ph.D.)
dóktêe wés	Dr. West
dòokmáaj (dòok)	flower
doolâa	dollar
doon myan	Don Muang (the name of the main commercial airport in Bangkok)
duu naan	to observe the operation (e.g. of a system), observe (some- thing) in operation
dûaj	also, too, as well
duu	to look at
dyan	month
dỳk	late at night (11 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
dỳym	to drink

### f

fǎa (fǎa)	wall
fáa (sǐi fáa)	sky (sky blue)
fàak	to deposit; to ask a person to carry on some business for you
fàak nən	to deposit money (in the bank)
faj (fáa)	electric light, electricity
faŋ (sǐi)	tooth
faŋ	to listen
fàŋ	bank (of a river), side (of the street)
faràŋ (khon)	white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, white Americans, etc.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

farànsèet (prathêet)	France, French
fæen (khon)	girl or boy friend
filíppin (prathêet)	Philippines, Philippine
fǎi myy	manual skill, craftsmanship
floridâa (rát)	Florida
fòot	a Ford (brand name)
frét	Fred (name)
frii	to be free (no cost)
fút	foot, English system

### h

hâ and há	They replace the polite female particles <u>khâ</u> and <u>khá</u> respectively in informal use.
há?	It replaces the male polite particle <u>kháp</u> in informal use.
hǎa	(to go) to see, visit, to look for, seek
hǎa { phóp cæe	to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)
hâa	five
hǎaj (paj)	to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight
hàan	to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant
haawaaj (kò)	Hawaii
hâj	for the benefit or in place of someone else
hâj jyym	to let someone borrow, to lend
hanlǎo	Hello.
(fỳk)hàt	to practice, drill, train

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

hě̃n	to see, perceive
hě̃n ca	to think
hề̃n	classifier for places
hò̃k	six
hók cè̃t	6 or 7
hò̃k-sì̃p	sixty
hooten	hotel
hò̃t	to shrink
hò̃o	carton, classifier for packages or things wrapped in paper
hố̃om	to smell sweet
hồ̃n (hồ̃n)	room
hồ̃n̄aahǎan (hồ̃n)	dining room, dining hall
hồ̃n̄kè̃p̄khố̃n (hồ̃n)	storage, space, storage room
hồ̃n̄khrua (hồ̃n)	kitchen
hồ̃n̄lè̃ep (hồ̃n)	laboratory (English loan 'lab')
hồ̃n̄nám	bathroom
hồ̃n̄prachum (hồ̃n)	auditorium
hồ̃n̄rá̃pkhè̃ek (hồ̃n)	reception room, living room
hồ̃n̄rian (hồ̃n)	classroom
hồ̃n̄samù̃t (hồ̃n)	library
hồ̃n̄thabian (hồ̃n)	registrar's (office)
hồ̃n̄tham̄naan (hồ̃n)	work room
hồ̃n̄thoorasà̃p (hồ̃n)	telephone room
hồ̃n̄kon	Hong Kong
hủ̃a (hủ̃a)	head
hủ̃akhâm	early evening (6 p.m. - 9 p.m.)
hủ̃anẫa (khon)	the chief, head (of an organiza- tion)
hủ̃alamphoõn	Hualampong (name of the main train station in Bangkok)

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## ↓

jaa (jàaŋ)	medicine, chemical compound
jaa hǒm	nice-smelling inhalants
jaasǐifan	toothpaste
jàa	don't (negative request form)
jâa	grass
jáaj { <sup>maa</sup> (+ jùu) pa.j	to move (in)
jâak	(to be) difficult
jàak hâj	to want to, would like to
jàaŋ	kind, type (with emphasis on quality); classifier for things
jàaŋdi	good quality
jàaŋ mâak	at most
jàaŋ nǒj	at least
jâat (khon)	relative(s)
jàj	(to be) large, big, major, main
jalaa	Yala (city in South Thailand)
jaŋ	still, not yet
jaŋraj, jaŋraj, ɲaj	how (question word)
jaŋnán, jàaŋnán	so
jáp	to wrinkle
jeel	Yale (University)
jen	evening (used for 4 p.m. - 6 p.m.)
jé, jéjé	(to be) a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully
jêe	(to be) terrible, to be in a bad way

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

jæeraman (prathêet)	Germany, German
jîam	to go to see, to visit
jîihôo	brand or trade name
jîipùn (prathêet)	Japan, Japanese
jîi-sìp	twenty
jindii	(to be) glad
-jon	ending of the months that have 30 days
jóom (phâa)	to dye (cloth)
juan	Vietnam, Vietnamese
júròop (thawîp)	Europe
jùt	to stop
jùt phá'k	to take a break
jùu	to live, stay, to be located at
juusít	U.S.I.S. (United States Informa- tion Service)
juusôm	U.S.O.M. (United States Opera- tions Mission)
jýan kàp	(to be) diagonally across (from)
jyyn	to stand

### k

kà	to guess, estimate
kaafæ	coffee
kaan	work, affairs
kaanbanjaa'j	lecturing, narration
kaan lýak	choice, selection (as an action)
kaanprachum	a meeting conference, session
kâan	classifier for matches
kaandaa	Kanda (female first name)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kaan̄keən̄ (tua)	trousers, pants
kâaw	nine
kâw-sìp	ninety
kâw-sìp `èt	ninety one
kamlan̄	aspect particle indicating action in process
kamlan̄ phoođii	just right
kamnan (khon)	kamnan, the chief of the tambon
kamphuu	Kambhu (Thai family name)
kan	together (particle indicating mutuality or reciprocity)
kanjaa (jon)	September
kàp, ka-	with
kàpkhâaw	food, something to eat with rice
kaproon̄	woman's skirt
karákkadaa (khom)	July
karunaa	please, kindly
kasètsàat	agriculture, also the name of the university of agriculture in Bangkok
kàw	(to be) old (of non living things), former (of living and non- living things)
kâwfi (tua)	chair
kawlŷi (prathêet)	Korea, Korean
keem (keem)	game (sports)
kèn̄	(to be) expert, skillful (at doing something)
kèn̄naan	Kengngan (last name)
kεε	he, she, they (in the third person) for children, inti- mates, persons of equal status

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kêe	to fix, correct (something)
kèe	dark (color)
kêe	to, for
kéepitôn	The Capitol (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
kèsalàk	to carve or chisel (as wood)
kəen	too much
kəen paj	too..., in excess
kìaw kàp	about, concerning
kìi	how many, (question word)
kiilaa	Sport(s), athletics
kiloo	kilometer
kiloo(kram)	kilogram (metric system)
kiloo(méet)	kilometer (metric system)
kin	to eat or drink something (common usage)
klaan	central, middle, neutral
klaanjàw klaanmàj	not old but not new
klaankhyyin	night time (used for 7 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
klaanwan	in the daytime, by day
klaj	(to be) far
klâj	(to be) near, close
klàk	small case or box, classifier for things in such containers hence, box of matches, etc.
klàp... (paj/maa)	to go back (return), to come back
klètthoon	Gold Flake (name of cigarettes)
klòn	a small carton or plastic box
klînthaajrûup (an)	camera

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

klua	to be afraid of
klûaj (lûuk)	banana
koŋsǔn (khon)	the Consul
kô	then, also, too, consequently (connective particle)
kô rŷaj rŷaj	so so
kô lésw kan	used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it.
kóof	golf
kôn	bump, cube, bar (classifier for bumpy objects, e.g. rocks, lumps of clay or sugar, cubes of sugar, chunks or hunks of coal or charcoal, bricks, broken bricks, cake of soap, clouds, and figuratively, sums of money)
kôn	before, first; used to emphasize the fact that the action is to be of very short duration
koŋ	division (subdivision of a <u>krom</u> )
koŋtháp	the armed forces (of a country)
koŋtháp aakàat	the Air Forces
koŋtháp bòk	the Army
koŋtháp rya	the Navy
kracòk (baan, phèn)	glass
kradaan	board
kradaandam (phèn)	blackboard
kradaat (phèn)	paper
kradaj	stairs, steps
kram	gram (metric system)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

krápǎw (baj)	suitcase, bag, purse
krasuaᅇ (krasuaᅇ)	ministry (division of the government)
krasuaᅇ (kaan)tàaᅇ prathêet	State Department, Foreign Ministry
krasuaᅇ kalaahǎom	Ministry of Defense
krasuaᅇ mahàatthaj	Ministry of the Interior
kratàaj (tua)	rabbit
kratìknàm (baj)	thermos bottle
krítìsàkàràat	Christian Era (A.D.)
krom	department (major subdivision of a ministry)
krom tamrùat	police department
kromathâa	navy blue, dark blue
kruᅇ (kruᅇ)	city (used to refer to some capital cities)
krunthêep	Bangkok
kumphaa(phan)	February
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent or degree
kwâaᅇ	(to be) broad, wide
kwâaᅇ khwǎaᅇ	(to be) wide, to be large, to be roomy
kyàp	almost

### kh

khâ	polite particle, <u>statement</u> by a female
khá	polite particle, <u>question</u> by a female
khâa	servant (as in khâarâatchakaan)
khâa	fee, cost, price, value

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khâacâaŋ	wage, wages, pay
khâachâw	the rent
khâadoojsaan	fare
khâajùu	lodging
khâakéēs	gas bill
khâalâwrian	tuition
khâarót	carfare
khâatittân	installation fee
khâarâatchakaan (khon)	government employee
khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan (khon)	civilian government employee
khâarâatchakaan thaahăan (khon)	military government employee
kháa	to trade, engage in trade
khăaj	to sell
khâam	to cross, across
khâaŋ	next to (something or someone), side
khâaŋbon	up above
khâaŋlâaŋ	down below
khâaŋlăŋ	the back, behind
khâaŋnâa	ahead, in front
khâaŋnaŋ	inside
khâaŋnôok	outside
khàat (tèē)	to be lacking, missing shortage of, short (of)
khàat tua	no bargaining
khâaw	rice
khăaw	white
(pen) khâj	(to have) (a) fever
(pen) khâjwàt	(to have) flu
kham	word

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khambanjaaĵ (khôo)	lecture
khamthăam (khôo)	question
khamtôop (khôo)	the answer
khâm	evening
khamăen (prathêet)	Cambodia, Cambodian
khamooĵ (khon)	thief, robber
khạn	classifier for cars, and other vehicles
khănṅən (baj)	silver bowl
•khanàat	size
khanáthīi	while
khàp rôt	to drive a car
khansen (khansen)	grade, score point(s)
khâw	to begin (to work, to learn), enter
khâwcaĵ	to understand
khâw hūn	to team up, to go into partnership
khăw, kháw	he, she; they (third person, singular and plural). It does <u>not</u> refer to things
khèek (khon)	dark-skinned people, Moslems and Hindus in particular
khelifoonia	California
khěṅ	(to be) hard, firm, strong, stiff
khêep	(to be) narrow
khəəĵ	to have ever (done something), to be used to (be something, etc.)
khăen	to lacquer
khĭan	to write
khĭaw	green (in color)
khĭaw òon	light green

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khiiinóot	keynote (name)
khítit	to strike, scratch
khít	to figure or reckon, to think
khít janṅaj	how is it figured (what is included in the calculations)
khít òok	to figure out
khêε { níi	up to (such and such a point)
{ nán	that near (far), to that extent
khloṅṅ (khloṅṅ)	canal
khloṅṅ tæej	Klong Toei (Section of Bangkok)
-khom	ending of months that have 31 days
khon (khon)	people, also classifier for humans
khoncháj (khon)	servant
khonkhâj (khon)	patients
khonkhàprót (khon)	chauffeur, driver
khonklaanṅ (khon)	the middle one (of children)
khonlék (khon)	the youngest one (of children)
khonnaṅ (khon)	insider
khonnôok (khon)	outsider or layman
khonsùtthóṅṅ (khon)	the youngest one (of children)
khon too (khon)	the oldest one (of children)
khonṅ (ca)	probably
khoolooradôo (rát)	Colorado
khôj	softly, low (of sound)
khǎo	to request, ask
khǎo jyum/jyum	to borrow
khǎothôot	excuse me
khooj	to wait

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khoołkèet	Colgate (trade name)
khǎnkèen	Khonkaen (city in Northeastern Thailand)
khǎn	thing, object; of, belonging to
khǎncháj (jàan, an, chíin)	something useful, utensils, things for use
khǎn hâj lýak	selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)
khǎnkhwǎn (jàan)	present, gift
khǎnlên (jàan)	toys
khǎnkèsalàk (jàan)	carvings
(khǎn)naj (jàan)	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country
(khǎn)nôok (jàan)	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country
khòpcaj	thank you (superior to inferior)
khòpkhun	Thank you.
khoośō	A.D.
khraaw	time(s) (occasion)
khraj	who, what (in some constructions)
khrań	time(s) (occasion) classifier for time
khrańp, há?, khań	polite particle, used in statements and questions by males
khriśàkàràat (khoo śō)	Christian Era
khriśamâat	Christmas
khriśatian	Christian (name of a hospital)
khroonkaan	project
khróp	to be complete (in quantity) to include all the members of a limited set of items
khriśòpkhrua (khriśòpkhrua)	the family

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khruu (khon)	teacher
khrȳaŋ	engine; -ware
khrȳaŋbin (khrȳaŋ)	airplane
khrȳaŋàtthéep (an)	tape recorder
khrȳaŋ (cák) (an)	machine
khrȳaŋfajfáa (khrȳaŋ)	electrical equipment
khrȳaŋchájfajfáa (khrȳaŋ)	electrical
khrȳaŋjon (khrȳaŋ)	engine
khrȳaŋkhǎen	lacquerware
khrȳaŋkhrua (khrȳaŋ)	kitchen utensils
khrȳaŋmyy (khrȳaŋ)	tool
khrȳaŋnən	silverware
khrȳaŋpèetkrapǎoŋ (an)	an electric can opener
khrȳaŋphét khrȳaŋthooŋ	jewelry
khrȳaŋpràpaakàat (khrȳaŋ)	air conditioning
khrȳaŋryan (chút)	furniture
khrȳaŋsákphâa (khrȳaŋ)	washing machine
khrȳaŋthǎm	nielloware
khrȳaŋthooŋsǎmrít	bronzeware
khrȳaŋthooŋ	things of gold
khrȳaŋtiikhàj (khrȳaŋ)	an electric (egg) beater
khrȳaŋ	half
khrȳaŋ lǎa	half yard
khuan ca	should
khùap	year (of age for people under 14 years)
khuj	to converse
khun	you (singular only) polite form
khun	Mr., Mrs., Miss (a polite title)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khun phôo	parents (polite usage)
khun mĕe (khon)	
khŭu	pair
khwaamciŋ	truthfully, actually
khwaamhĕn	opinion
khwaamkhíthĕn	opinion
kwâaŋ	(to be) wide, to be broad
khÿn	(to go) up
khÿn nĕn	to cash a check
khyy	to be (in written language or formal speech)
khyyŋ	night
khyyŋní	tonight

### 1

la	question word
la, lá	per, a, the
laa	to say goodbye (said only by person leaving)
lăa	yard (36 <sup>m</sup> )
lăakhrÿŋ	one and one half yards
lăaj	many, several
lăan	million
laaŋsàat (lŭuk, phŏn)	bangsa (small fruit)
laaw (prathĕet)	Laos, Lao, Laotian
lăks	Lux (brand name)
lambàak	(to be) hard, difficult, troublesome
lăŋ	behind
lăŋ	classifier for houses and buildings

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

lâw (khùat)	liquor, alcohol (bottle)
làwníi	these, this group
làwnán	those, that group
lèek	iron, steel
lék	(to be) small, little (in size)
lékchêe (khôo)	lecture
lêm	classifier for 'book'
lên	to play (games, music, etc.)
lé	and
leew	to be bad, poor (in quality); low (in character)
lèep (hôn)	lab (English loan)
léew	and then (sentence connective)
léew	(used to indicate completed action)
léew rý jaᅇ	or not yet? (used in questions)
léew lý jaᅇ	
léew lé jaᅇ	
léew ý jaᅇ	
léew é jaᅇ	
læej	quite
læej	at all (after a negative); so, then, consequently
lêek	to be over, to end, to quit, discontinue, to give up, to break up
líañ dèk	to take care of children, to raise children
lídôo	Lido (name)
líaw	to turn
líf	elevator

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

lít	liter (metric system)
lon	to (go) down
lôok	world
lópburii	Lopburi (city in Central Thailand)
lót	to reduce (the price), to lower, discount
lɔɔndɔɔn (krun)	London
lòɔt	classifier for tube, tube of toothpaste
lòɔt fajfáa (lòɔt)	light bulb
lûanâa	in advance
lúk	to get up
lûuk (khon)	child (common usage, refers to one's direct descendant)
lûuk	classifier for fruit
lûuknóɔn (khon)	subordinate (employee)
lûukthóɔ (lûuk)	peach (a Chinese loan word)
lûuksít (khon)	student, pupil
lǎkæen	too..., so...
lǎk	to choose, pick out, select, elect
lǎktân	to elect (as in a political election)
lǎn	(to be) yellow
lyym	to forget

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m

maa	to come
(paj)... maa	to come from
maa kòon	previously
maa léew	ago
maa thŷn	to arrive (towards speaker)
máa (tua)	horse
mǎa (tua)	dog
máaj (an, phèen)	wood, stick
máajkèsalak	woodcarvings
májkhít (faj)	matches
máaj sàk	teak
mâak	(to be) much, many; a lot; very
maalíkaa	Malika (female first name)
mahǎasàk	Mahasak (last name)
mahǎawítthajaalaj	university
mai	mile
mǎj, máj	question word
màj	again, new
mâj	no, not (a negative word)
mâj châj	It is not so. It is not the one (meant). (Negative response)
mâj dâj	not, not as assumed to be
mâj khôj (ca)	scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very
mâj wǎj	can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mák ca	usually, likely to
mâᅇ	some, any (pronominal, another form of <u>bâᅇ</u> )
malajuu	Malaya
malakᅇᅇ (lûuk)	papaya (fruit)
malí	Malee (Thai girl's name)
mamûᅇᅇ (lûuk)	mango (fruit)
maᅇkhút (lûuk)	mangosteen (fruit)
maryynníi	the day after tomorrow
míchíkᅇᅇn (rát)	Michigan
meesǎa(jon)	April
méet	meter (metric system)
mesachusèᅇ(rát)	Massachusetts
mét	seed, grain, pill; classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)
mêᅇ (khon)	mother
mêᅇbâᅇn (khon)	housewife
mêᅇkháa (khon)	salesperson (female)
mêᅇnám (sǎaj)	river
méᅇn	Maen (male or female first name)
mᅇeríi	Mary (name)
mii	to have
mii	there is, are (existence)
mii... jùu	has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found
miinaa(khom)	March
míssís	Mrs.
místᅇ	Mr.
mítchân	Mission (name of a hospital in Bangkok)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

míthunaa (jon)	June
mítraphâap	Friendship (name of a highway in Thailand)
mít su	Mitsu (name of a restaurant)
mókkaraa (khom)	January
moon	o'clock, time
m๓๐ (khon)	medical doctor
muan	classifier for cigarette, cigar
mum (mum)	corner
mún (lǎn)	mosquito net
múnlûat (lǎn)	screen (for window, etc.)
m̂ya	used for past time
m̂yakíkiníi, m̂yakíi, m̂yakíi	a short time ago
m̂yawaanníi	yesterday
m̂yaràj	when, question word
m̂yankan, m̂yankan	too, also
myan (myan)	city, country (nation)
myy (myy)	hand
m̂yyn	ten thousand
m̂yyt	(to be) dark

### n

na, ná	particle used to make the question sound less abrupt
naa (râj)	rice field
nâa kwâan	in front; face
nâa	width (for fabric)
nâa khêep	narrow
nâa	worthy of, leading to, or - able -(It combines with other verbs to form verb compounds)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

nâa-àan	interesting to read
nâab̀ya	(to be) dull
nâacháj	(to be) nice to use
nâachâw	(to be) nice to rent
nâaduu	(to be) interesting to look at
nâafaŋ	(to be) interesting to listen to
nâaj̀ùu	(to be) cozy, livable
nâakhàp	(to be) nice to drive
nâarák	(to be) lovable, cute
nâasǒncaj	(to be) interesting
nâasǒn	(to be) nice to teach
nâasýy	(to be) nice to buy
nâathan	to look delicious
nâatàaŋ (nâatàaŋ)	window
nǎa	(to be) heavy (of material), heavy texture
naaj (khon)	Mr. (title)
naajnâa (khon)	agent
naajók	} (thân)
naajók rátthamontri	
naalikaa (ryan)	prime minister (official name)
naamsakun	watch, clock
naan	family name
naanaaphan	(to be) long (in time)
naaŋ (khon)	Nanaphan (name of a shop)
naaŋphajaabaan (khon)	female, Mrs.
naathii	female nurse
nâathîi	minute
nǎaw	duty
naj	(to be) cold
	in, inside

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

(khǒŋ) naj	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or country
nǎj	which (one(s)) (determiner)
nák-	one who - (agent noun) (never alone)
nàk	(to be) heavy (in weigh); hard (of work); severely, very
nák	so, so much
nákkaanmyaŋ (khon)	a politician
nákphaasáa (khon)	linguistic scientist, linguist
nákrian (khon)	student, pupil
nákrian kàw (khon)	former student
nákrian naj (khon)	Thais educated in Thailand
nákrian nǒk (khon)	Thais who were educated abroad
náksýksǎa (khon)	student
nakhǒn râatchasimaa	Korat (Nakorn rachasima) (city in Northeastern Thailand)
nakhǒnsǐi thammarâat	Nakorn Sri Thammarat (city in Southern Thailand)
(sǐi) námŋen	(to be) blue (in color)
(sǐi) námtaan	(to be) brown (in color), sugar
nân	that (one), there
nán, nân	that (determiner)
nǎŋ (rýaŋ)	movie (story)
náŋsýy (lêm)	a book
náŋsýyphim (chabàp)	newspaper
nâŋ	to sit
nénam	to introduce, to advise, to suggest
khamnénam	advice, suggestion, instruction
nîi	this (one), here

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

níi, nīi	this (determiner)
nít nòɔj	a little
nítsɪt (khon)	student (at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts Universities)
niw delhii	New Delhi
níw	inch (English system)
njuu jóɔk	New York
nók (tua)	bird
nókjuuŋ (tua)	peacock
nókkêew (tua)	parrot
noŋjaw	Nongyaw (Thai female first name)
noŋlák	Nonglak (female first name)
nôn	over there
nôn	that (one) over there, over there (pronominal)
nóon, nôon	the one over there (determiner)
nòɔj	maybe used to make a request less abrupt
nóɔj	few
nóɔj	(to be) little, small, less, slight (in quantity)
nôɔk	outside, external
(khǎɔŋ) nôɔk	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand
noon	to sleep
nǎɔn (tua)	worm
nóɔŋ (khon)	younger brothers and/or sisters
nóɔŋchaaŋ (khon)	younger brother(s)
nóɔŋsǎaw (khon)	younger sister(s)
noorawee (prathêet)	Norway

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

nútchanan	Nuchanan (female first name)
nýa	north, above
nýaphâa	texture of cloth
nýk	think about, can recall, can remember
nýk òøk	to be able to recall to memory
nyn, nỳn	one, a

### η

ηâaj	to be simple, easy
ηaan	ceremony
ηaan	work
ηaanlían	party (entertainment)
ηaan phátthanaa	community development
ηaj	variant form of <u>janraj</u>
ηán	in that case
ηen	silver, money
ηenbèæk	a deposit (in a bank)
ηenthoon	change (money returned)
ηó (lûuk)	rambuttan (fruit)
ηuâηnoon	to be sleepy

### p

pâaj (pâaj)	(traffic) stop sign, tag, sign poster
pâaj rótmee (pâaj)	bus stop
pàak (pàak)	mouth, beak, lips, opening
pàaknáam	Paknam (name of an Amphoe)
pàaks๑๑	the entrance into a lane

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

pàakkaa (dâam)	pen
páak kâe	Parker
paj	to go
paj kòon	to go first, to go ahead
paj... maa	to come from
paj thǎn	to arrive (away from speaker)
(cháa) paj	too (much)
pàk	part (with <u>pàk</u> <u>tâj</u> 'Southern Part' only)
pámnámmán	a gas pump
paríit (krún)	Paris
páthumwán	Patoomwan, (section of Bangkok)
pattani	Pattini (city in South Thailand)
pen	to be
pensilweenia	Pennsylvania
pentaakòon	the Pentagon
pèet	eight
pèet	to open, turn on (lights)
píi	year
pít	to close, turn off (lights)
plaaasâa	Plaza, name of a hotel in Bangkok
pláatsatík	plastic
plàaw	no (it isn't so) - particle indicating strong disagreement with the information content of the question
plæe	to translate
plèek (plèek)	(to be) unusual, (to be) strange
plòotphaj	to be safe, out of danger

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

plyaŋ	to use up, to consume, to waste (e.g. money, time resources) the expenses; to be expensive
poon	pound (weight)
pracam	to be stationed
prachaathíppataj	freedom (also the name of a monument in Bangkok)
prachum	to meet (in a group), to hold a meeting; meeting, assembly
pradìt	Pradit (given name)
prajsanii	the post office
prajsaniiklaaŋ	The Central Post Office
pramaan	about, to approximate, to estimate
praphâat	Prabas (Thai male first name)
prasàat	Prasat, male first name
prasèet	Prasert (male first name)
prasìt	Prasit (male first name)
prathaan (khon)	president, chairman
prathaan aathípbòodii (khon)	the president of a country
prathêet (prathêet)	country, nation
pratuu (baan)	door, gate
pratuunám	Pratunam (name of the section in Bangkok)
présidên	President (English name)
prɛɛŋ (prɛɛŋ)	brush
prɛɛŋsǎifan (prɛɛŋ)	toothbrush
prichaa	Pricha (Thai male first name)
pròot	please (request form)
prýksǎa	to talk it over, consult
pùat	to ache, have a pain

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phaa... {	paj	to take, or escort someone
	maa	
phâafâaj		cotton
phâamăj		silk
phâanajlôn		nylon
phâak (phâak)		part, region, section
phàan		to pass, to go past
phaasăa (phaasăa)		language, speech
phahônjoothin		phahonyothin Road (in Bangkok)
phajabaan		to nurse
phák		to stay at, to stop at (hotel, etc.)
phák phòn		to rest
phamâa (prathêet)		Burma, Burmese
phan		thousand
-phan		ending for month of February
phanákraan (khon)		employee
phanrajaa, pharijaa, phanjaa (khon)		wife (elegant term)
phátlom (khrŷan)		electric fan
phát phon		Pat Pong Street (in Bangkok)
phátthanaakon (khon)		a community development worker
phét		diamond
phétphlɔɔj		jewelry
phétburii		Phetburi (city in Central Thailand)
phèn		classifier for 'map, picture, paper' sheet-like
phènŷan		records (phonograph)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phěnthîi (phèn)	map
phæŋ	(to be) expensive
phêŋ	just (immediately before)
phíčaj	Phichai (male first name)
phîi (khon)	older brother(s) and/or sister(s)
phîichaaĵ (khon)	older brother(s)
phîinóŋ (khon)	brother(s) and sister(s)
phîisăaw (khon)	older sister(s)
phim	to type
phim (dîit)	to typewrite, print
phimphaa	Pimpa (female first name)
phimsěen	smelling salts
phìt	(to be) incorrect, a mistake
phítsanulôok	Pitsanuloke (city in Northern Thailand)
phii-éks	the PX (Post Exchange)
phlɔɔĵ	precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc.
phǒm	I (male speaker)
phǒn	classifier for fruit
phǒnlamáaj	fruit
phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phóp	to meet, run into (someone)
phóp... kan	to meet or see each other
phɔɔ	to be enough, sufficient
phôo (khon)	father, male engaged in...
phǒm	(to be) thin (not fat)
phôokháa (khon)	merchant
phɔɔsǒ	B.E.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phrá-aathít	Pra-aathit Street (in Bangkok)
phrácan (thâa)	Phracan ('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River
phráraam sîi	Rama the Fourth (street)
phránakoon	Bangkok (official name of the province the city of Bangkok is located in)
phró ... (wâa)	because
phróom	to be ready, set, completed
phrûnníi	tomorrow
phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon)	November
phrýtsaphaa(khom)	May
phuan	bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch
phútthá sàkàràat (phooosǎo)	Buddhist Era
phûu	person, one who
phûuchaaĵ (khon)	man, boy (male human of any age)
phûuchâw (khon)	tenant
phûuchġawchaan (khon)	an expert
phûujàĵ (khon)	an adult
phûujĳĳ (khon)	woman, girl (female human of any age)
phûut	to speak, talk, say
phûut taam	to repeat after
phÿan (khon)	friend
phÿyn	floor

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### r

raaj la-lat	details
raakhaa	price
raamâa	the Rama (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
ráan (hèn, ráan)	shop, store
ránaaháan (ráan)	restaurant
ráankaafεε (ráan)	coffee shop
ráankháajjaa (ráan)	a pharmacy
ráankháajkhǒŋ (ráan)	shop, store
ráannánsýyphim (ráan)	a newstand
ráanmǒo (ráan)	a doctor's office
ráantàtphǒm (ráan)	a barber shop
ráantàtsýa (ráan)	a tailor shop
raanwan (jàan)	prize (kind)
râatcha-	pertaining to the king
râatburii	Ratburi (city in Central Thailand)
râatchadamnœn	Rachadamnoen (Road)
râatchadamrì	Rachadamri (Road)
râatchawithĩi	Rajawithee (Road)
râatprasǒŋ	Ratprasong (section of Bangkok)
raaw, raawraaw	around, approximately
rabian (rabian)	corridor
rák	to love
rákthaj	Rakthai (Thai family name)
ráp	to receive, accept, to take on, to eat (something)
(paj/maa) ráp	to go meet someone, to go get something

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

ráprouṅ dâj	guarantee, can guarantee
rát (rát)	state, nation
rátsia (prathêet)	Russia
rátthamontriī	minister (head of a ministry)
raw	we, our, us
reenuu	Renu (male or female first name)
reṅ	fast, soon, early
rêĕk	to be first
reṅthian	watt (measure of electricity)
rêem	to start
rĕak wâa	to be called
rian	to study, learn
rĭan	coin, dollars
rĭip	to hurry, to be urgent
rĭit	to iron (cloth)
rim (rim)	edge, rim, bank
(pen) rôok àhiwaa	(to have) cholera
(pen) rôok bìt	(to have) dysentery
(pen) rôok sâjtan	(to have) appendicitis
room (kruṅ)	Rome
rooṅ (rooṅ)	bu'lding
rooṅnǎṅ (rooṅ)	movie house, cinema
rooṅnǎṅ khiṅ (rooṅ)	King's Cinema
rooṅrian (hèṅ)	school
rooṅrian naanaachâat (rooṅrian)	The International School
rooṅrót (rooṅ)	garage, carport
rooṅṅaan (rooṅ)	factory
rooṅphajabaan (rooṅ, hèṅ)	hospital

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

roonrɛɛm (roonrɛɛm, hɛŋ)	hotel
rópkuən	to bother, trouble (someone)
rót (khan)	car
róttúktúk (khan)	a small 3-wheeled car used mainly as taxis
rótfaj (khabuan)	a train
rótjon (khan)	car, motor car
rótmeɛ (khan)	bus
rótsǎamlóɔ (khan)	samlor (3 wheeled vehicle)
rót	flavor
rɔ, ròk, rɔk, ròɔk, rɔɔk, rə-	particle often used with statement of negation
róɔj	hundred
róɔn	(to be) hot (temperature)
roontháw (khûu, khâan)	shoes (pair; one of a pair)
ruaj	(to be) rich, wealthy
ruam	include, to combine, add, add up, sum up
rûam caj	Ruam chaj (name of lane on Sukhumwit Road)
rûam rýdii	Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off Sukhumwit Road
rúucàk	to know, to be acquainted with, to be familiar with
rúu rýan	to understand (a subject)
rûup (baj)	picture
ré, rýy, rý, lýy, lý	question word
rýjan	yet (question word)
rýplàaw	question word (negative)
rýy, rý	or
rya } khrýan }	bin (lam, khrýan) airplane

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

rya (lam)	boat
ryabaj (lam)	sail boat
ryacâaŋ (lam)	rented boat
ryan	classifier for 'watch, clock'
rŷaj rŷaj	so so (as a response to a greeting)
ryan (lǎŋ)	house (in older Thai)
ryankhoncháj (lǎŋ)	servants' quarters
rŷaŋ	story (about), about (classifier for story)

### s

sà wâajnáam	swimming pool
sa-àat	to be clean
sǎaj	late, the time (9 a.m.-11:59 a.m.)
sǎaj	1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line like objects. 2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line')
sǎalaa (lǎŋ)	a pavilion, a hall, a public building
sǎalaa ameerikan	the USIS auditorium
sǎam	three
sǎam-síp	thirty
sǎamii (khon)	husband (elegant term)
saan fransisko	San Francisco
sâap	to know (a fact)
sǎatharaaná	public (not private)
sǎathoon	Sathorn (street in Bangkok)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

săathoøn tâj	South Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sabaajdi1	to feel well, be in good health
sabùuhđom (khôøn)	toilet soap
sabùu(láks) (kôøn)	(Lux) soap
sabùunaj (khôøn)	local soap
sabùunôok (khôøn)	imported soap
sabùusákphâa (khôøn)	laundry soap
sabùuthaj (khôøn)	Thai soap
sadùak	to be convenient
sajăam	Siam (former name for Thailand)
sajăam intəe	Siam International Hotel
sàhàprachaachâat	The United Nations
sák (or) sàk	a little, bit
sák pradĭaw	a minute
sák	to wash (cloth only), to launder
sák hêɛŋ	to dry clean
sák náam	to wash (in water), to be washable
sakòt	to spell (words)
sakruu	one fourth yard
samăan	Saman, male or female first name
samăj	time, period, era, age, reign
samăj màj	modern
saměe	always, regularly, consistently
sămnákŋaan (hèŋ)	office (of an agency, etc.)
sámràp	for
samít	Smith (name)
samoosđon	club, association
samùt (lêm)	notebook

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

samùt thoorasàp (lêm)	a phone book
sân	(to be) short (in length)
sanăam (sanăam)	yard, field, (golf) course
sanăam (hèn)	field, (as in airfield, sports field, etc.)
sanăamjâa (sanăam)	lawn, yard
sanăambin (hèn)	airport
sanăamkilaa (hèn)	the sports stadium
sanăamlũaŋ (hèn)	the Pramane Grounds in Bangkok
sanăammăa (hèn)	race track
sanít	extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)
sănjaachâw (baj)	a lease
sanùk	(to be) amusing, to be fun, to have a good time
sawàt	Sawat (name)
sawàtdii	hello (used for greeting or leavetaking)
sawít (prathêet)	Switzerland
sàŋ	to order, to leave instructions or a message
sàŋ (hâj)	to order
sàpdaa, sàppadaa	week (elegant usage)
sapeen (prathêet)	Spain
saphaan (saphaan, an)	bridge (a structure)
saphaan khwaaj (saphaan, an)	the Water Buffalo Bridge (name of a bridge in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road)
sapòot khláp	The Royal Bangkok Sports Club
sàpparót (lûuk, baj)	pineapple
sàpràthum	Saprathum (name of the corner and section in Bangkok)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

saprinǰil	Springfield
sàt (tua)	animal
...lían (tua)	pet
satàan	satang (Thai coinage)
sathǎan (hèn)	place, location
sathǎankonǰsǔn (hèn)	the Consulate
sathǎanii (hèn)	station
sathǎaniirótfaj (hèn)	the railroad station
sathǎaniiitamrùat (hèn)	police station
sathǎanthíi (hèn)	place, site (place equipped for particular kind of work, activity, etc.)
sathǎanthûut (hèn)	embassy
sǎw	Saturday
sèet satàan	change (in coin)
sen (tikram)	centigram (metric system)
sen (timéet)	centimeter (metric system)
sên	for rope, cord
sèt	to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)
sěen	hundred thousand
si	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
si, sî, sí	to request someone to do some- thing, to urge someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request or obviously needs doing
sǎa	to pay out (money) to waste, lose (time) to be obligated to pay
sǎa (khâa)	to pay for something (a bill, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sìi	four
sìijêek	corner
sìi-sìp	forty
sǎi (sǎi)	color
sǎi	to polish
sǎilom	Silom (name of the street in Bangkok)
sǎisà	head (elegant word)
sǎinkháa thaj	Thai merchandise
sǎinhǎa(khom)	August
sìp	ten
sirirâat	Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi
sòkkapròk	to be dirty
sôm (lûuk)	orange
sôm oo (lûuk)	pomelo
sǎmsàk	Somsak (male first name)
sòn	to pass, to hand (someone something)
sòn	to send or ship something; to see someone off, to take someone somewhere
sǎnkhǎa	Songkla (city in South Thailand)
sǎmcít	Somchit (male or female first name)
sòot (khon)	to be single, unmarried state single person, bachelor, spinster
sòt	(to be) fresh (of fruit, etc.)
sǎoj	lane (narrow street)
sǎon	to teach
sǎon dǎen	Red Arrow (name of a restaurant in Bangkok)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sɔɔŋ	classifier for cigarettes; envelope
sɔɔŋcòtmǎaj	envelope
sɔɔŋ	two
sɔɔŋchán	two story
sɔŋkhraam	war
sòɔp	to test, be tested
sǎaj	(to be) pretty, beautiful
sǎan (sǎan)	garden
sǎandòɔkmǎaj	flower garden
sǎanmǎak	most of, in the main
sùk	to be ripe
sùksǎalaa (hèn)	public health center or clinic
sukhǔmwít	Sukhumwit Road
sǔnthɔɔn	Sunthorn (male first name)
suriwɔŋ	Suriwong (street in Bangkok)
sùttháaj	last, final
sǎunklaaŋ (hèn)	center
sǔuŋ	to be high, tall
sǎa	refers to top garments, such as shirts and blouses, woman's dress
sǎa kaaŋkeean	suit of clothes (for men) any ensemble of clothes that includes an upper garment and slacks or pants. (e.g. women's blouse and slacks, children's coveralls, pajamas, etc.)
sǎanɔɔk	jacket
sǎaphâa (tua, chú)	cloth
sǎa (tua)	tiger

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sỳksǎa	to study, learn
sýy	to buy, (with <u>khǒn</u> 'to shop')
sýy... { paj } ...fàak { maa }	to buy something as a gift or souvenir for someone
<u>t</u>	
taam	along, after; to follow
tàaŋ	(to be) different, separate
tàaŋ kàp	to differ, be different, distinct (i.e. from each other), to differ from
tàaŋcaŋwàt	in the provinces, out-of-town
(jùu) tàaŋhàak	to be separate
tàaŋ prathêet	foreign
tâj	South, under
tâjthǔn	the space under the house
talàat (hèn)	market
talàat náam	the Floating Market in Thonburi
talàat nát (hèn)	a special kind of market which is open regularly on a certain day
tambon (tambon)	precinct, subdivision of an amphoe
tamnèeŋ	position (rank)
tamrùat (khon)	police
tâŋ	as much as, as many as
tâŋ	to be located
tâŋtèe	from (such and such a time or starting point), since
tàt	to cut, sever

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

taw (taw)	stove
tawkéss (taw)	gas stove
tawríit (an)	to iron (for clothing)
teeharaan (myan)	Teheran
tenníit	tennis
tênram	to dance (Western style)
tèè	but
tèè } ta } cháaw	very early
tesnmoò (lûuk)	watermelon
tèn	to decorate, adorn (the verb in <u>tèn naan</u> )
tèn naan	to marry, to get married, to be married
tíia	to be short, low (in height)
tian (tian)	bed (to sleep on)
tii	o'clock (for the time 1 a.m. - 5 a.m.)
tít	to get stuck (to, in), to connect, to stick (to), to attach (to)
rót tít	the traffic's heavy
tít (múnluat)	to (be) screen(ed)
títtân	to install
títtòò kàp	to contact or get in touch with someone
tó (tua)	table, desk
tòk	to fade (of colors), to drop, to fall (straight) down (from, into, onto), to fall or drop off, decrease, diminish, to set (of the sun, moon)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

tòkloŋ	right, O.K., to agree (to something)
tônmaaŋ (tôn)	plant, tree
too	(to be) big, large, mature
tookiaŋ (kruŋ)	Tokyo
tòo (raakhaa)	to bargain
tòo (thoorasàp)	to make a phone call
tòon	sometime, time, part of (something)
tòon (thîi)	during, section (of space or time), part
tôn	must, have to
tônkaan	to want, need
tòop	to answer
traa	brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.)
tron	right, exactly sharp (of time)
tron (nǎj)	(exactly) where
tron { ka- kàp	to correspond to, agree with, coincide with
tronkan khâam	opposite
tronkhâam kan kàp	opposite
tua	classifier for 'animals, objects with legs (chairs, tables, etc.)'
tua phǒm een	I (myself)
... kháw ...	he (himself), etc. <u>tua... een</u> is more emphatic than <u>tua</u> alone.
tua myan	the business district
tua nánsǎy (tua)	letter (of the alphabet)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

tulaa(khom)	October
tûu (baj)	chests of drawers, cabinets, (book)cases, wardrobe
tûujen (tûu)	refrigerator
tỳk (lǎŋ)	building

### th

thaa (sǎi)	to smear, spread (on), to paint
thâa (thâa, hèn)	port, harbor
thàaj rûup	to take pictures
thǎam	to ask, (a question)
thaan	to eat, drink (elegant term)
thàanfajchaaj (kôn)	flashlight batteries
thaan	way, path, direction, means
thaan̄khwǎa	to the right
thaan̄lỳak	choice (as a means)
thaan̄nỳa	North
thaan̄sáaj	to the left
thaan̄tâj	South
thaan̄kasèt	agricultural
thǎawoon	Thaworn (Thai male first name)
thahǎan (khon)	serviceman
thahǎan aakàat (khon)	airman
thahǎan b̀ok (khon)	soldier
thahǎan rya (khon)	sailor
thaj	Thai
thalee	sea
tham	to do, make
thamnaan	to work

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

tham dūaj...	made of...
thammaj	why (question word)
thammadaa	usually, normally
thammasàat	Thammasart (university of Bangkok)
than	to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to
than samǎj	modern, up-to-date
thân	you, he, she (for persons of superior status)
thanaakhaan (hèn)	bank
thanaakhaan ameerikan	the Bank of America (the American bank)
thanaakhaan thaj	the Bank of Thailand
thanàt khooman	Mr. Thanat Khoman, Foreign Minister of Thailand
thanǒn (sǎaj)	street, road
thanǒn jàj	the main street
thanwaa(khom)	December
thǎn (baj)	pail
thánmòt	altogether
thaw	grey (color)
thâw kàp	equal, same in size or quantity
thâwnán	only, only that (much)
thâwraaj	how many, how much (question word)
théep	tape (English loan word)
thên	classifier for 'pencil', etc.
théeksîi (khan)	taxi
thěew	section, district (of a town)
thěewnán	over there, that area

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

(kan) thè, (thè, thèet)	why not, let's
thīaŋ	noon
thīaŋ khyyn	midnight
thīaw	for pleasure
paj thīaw	to go out for pleasure
thīi	instance, case, time
thīidiaw	exactly, quite, very
thīi	may be used in the place of <u>nòoj</u> to soften a request if something is to be done for the speaker
thīi wīi (khrŷaŋ)	TV
thīi	place; at, in (means 'place where' as head of noun compounds)
thīi nǎj	where (as question word); anywhere (in negative statement)
thīinān	there
thīinīi	here
thīinōon	way over there
thīicòetrót (thīi)	parking lot
thīilêskŋen	place to exchange money
thīiprachum (hèn)	a meeting (place), assembly, gathering (of people)
thīisòŋ thooralêek	the place to send telegrams
thīithamŋaan (hèn, thīi)	office
thīithamkaan	the office
thīi	form that is used with numerals to form ordinal numbers, hence <u>thīi sǎam</u> 'third', etc.
thīi nyn	first
thīi sǎam	third

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thîi sîi	fourth
thîi sǒŋ	second, etc.
thîisùt	superlative most, -est (occurs in construction with stative verbs)
thîi	that, which (connective)
thîi léew	ago
(aathít) thîi léew	last (week, etc.)
thîi-	means 'simple device' when used as the head of certain noun compounds.
thîitiikhàj (thîi)	an ordinary (egg) beater
thîipèətkrapǒŋ (thîi)	an ordinary can opener
thîip	to ride, pedal
thîp thǒop	Tip Top (name of a coffee shop)
thǒm	to make nielloware
thon	to be durable, lasting, to last, to endure
thonabàt	bank note
thonburii	Thonburii, name of a province in Thailand. It used to be the capital during the period from 1767 through 1782.
thoomás	Thomas
thooralêek (chabàp)	telegram
thoo (rasàp)	
.... (rasàp) paj	} to telephone, to call
.... (rasàp) maa	
thoorathát (khÿaŋ)	
thoo (phâa)	T.V.
thoom	to weave cloth
thoon	Tom (a name)
thoon	to give change (money)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

tho๑n	gold
th๑๑n (th๑๑n)	stomach, intestinal area
tho๑nlǎn	bronze (the market term)
tho๑nsǎmrít	bronze (technical name)
thŭaj (baj)	cup (classifier for a cup of something)
thŭan	exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number
thúk	every, each
thun (thun)	a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship
thŭn (baj)	a bag
thŭm	o'clock, (used for 7 p.m. - 11 p.m.)
thurá	business, affairs, errands
paj thurá	to go out on business
thúrian (lŭuk)	durian (fruit)
thùuk	(to be) right, correct
thŭut (khon)	the ambassador (common usage)
thŭn, thŭn	to reach, get to; that, so, then, if it comes to the point that

### W

wâa	to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion; that (when used with verbs like <u>phŭut</u> )
wâajnáam	to swim
waansyyn(níi)	the day before yesterday
wâan	(to be) sweet (in flavor)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

waaníi	Wanee (female first name)
wâan	(to be) free, not busy, not occupied
wâj	a salute made by placing the hands palm to palm and raising them towards the face
wájt	White (English name)
wan (wan)	day (classifier for day)
wanníi	today
wanaŋkhaan	Tuesday
wanathít	Sunday
wancan	Monday
wanph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wanphút	Wednesday
wansǎw	Saturday
wansùk	Friday
wanlǎŋ	some day (in the future)
wanphrá	Buddhist day of worship
wanthíi	date; (the... th)
wǎŋ	to hope
(pen) wàt	(to have) a cold
wát (wát)	temple, temple compound
wátthanátham	culture
weelaa	time (to do something, etc.)
weelaaníi	at present
wé	to stop in, over
wəəcínia (rát)	Virginia
wíatnaam (prathêet)	Vietnam, Vietnamese
wíchaj	Wichai (male first name)
wǐi	bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

wítsawákoon (khon)

an engineer

wítthajú (khrÿaŋ, an)

radio; Withayu (Thai name of  
a street); Wireless Road  
(English name)

wóochiŋtân

Washington